Dell™ 1355cn/1355cnw Multifunction Color Printer
User's Guide

Contents

Setting Up Printer (Printer Setup) 39

Using Your Printer 121

Printing, Copying, Scanning, and Faxing 227

Maintaining Your Printer 437

Before Beginning

Notes, Notices, and Cautions

📝 **NOTE:** A **NOTE** indicates important information that helps you make better use of your printer.

➡️ **NOTICE:** A **NOTICE** indicates either potential damage to hardware or loss of data and tells you how to avoid the problem.

⚠️ **CAUTION: A CAUTION indicates a potential for property damage, personal injury, or death.**

Information in this document is subject to change without notice.

© 2010 Dell Inc. All rights reserved.

UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT RESTRICTED RIGHTS

This software and documentation are provided with RESTRICTED RIGHTS. Use, duplication, or disclosure by the Government is subject to restrictions as set forth in subparagraph (c)(1)(ii) of the Rights in Technical Data and Computer Software clause at DFARS 252.227-7013 and in applicable FAR provisions: Dell Inc., One Dell Way, Round Rock, Texas, 78682, USA.

November 2010 Rev. A00

1

Dell™ 1355cn/1355cnw Multifunction Color Printer User's Guide

Click the links to the left for information on the features, options, and operation of your printer. For information on other documentation included with your printer, see "Finding Information" on page 25.

To order replacement toner cartridges or supplies from Dell:

1 Double-click the icon on your desktop.

If you cannot find the icon on your desktop, follow the procedure below.

   a Navigate to **x:\abc\Dell Printers\Dell 1355 Multifunction Color Printer\Reorder**, where **x:\abc** is the location where the printer software is installed.

   b Click the file **dl1armm.exe**.

   c Click **File** on the toolbar.

   d Choose **Send To** from the drop-down menu, and then click **Desktop(create shortcut)** on the submenu that appears.

2 Visit the Dell Printer Supplies website at **www.dell.com/supplies**, or order Dell printer supplies by phone.

For best service, have your Dell printer Service Tag ready.

To locate the Service Tag of your printer, see "Express Service Code and Service Tag" on page 27.

2

Finding Information

📖 **NOTE:** The USB cable and the Ethernet cable are not shipped with your printer.

What are you looking for?	Find it here
• Drivers for my printer • My *User's Guide*	*Drivers and Utilities* CD The *Drivers and Utilities* CD contains setup video, documentation, and drivers for your printer. You can use the CD to install/re-install drivers or access your setup video and documentation. Readme files may be included on your CD to provide last-minute updates about technical changes to your printer or advanced technical reference material for experienced users or technicians.
• How to use my printer	*Quick Reference Guide*

What are you looking for?	Find it here
• Safety information • Warranty information	*Product Information Guide* **CAUTION: Read and follow all safety instructions in your *Product Information Guide* prior to setting up and operating your printer.**
How to set up my printer	*Setup diagram*
Troubleshooting	"Troubleshooting" on page 477
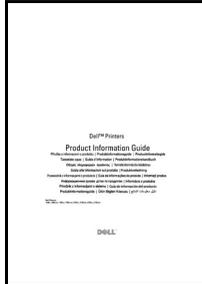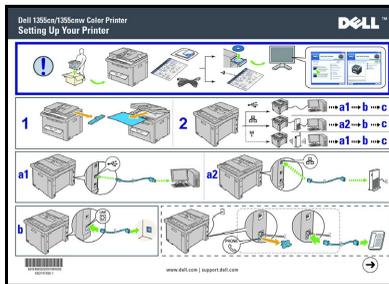
What are you looking for?	Find it here
Express Service Code and Service Tag	

Service Tag   Express Service Code
xxxxxxx   000 000 000 00
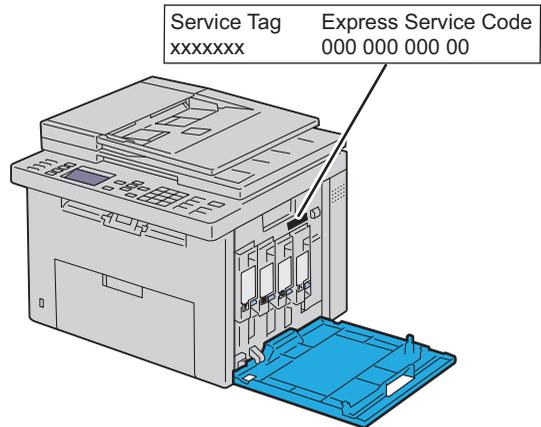
The Express Service Code and Service Tag are located inside the side door of your printer.

• Latest drivers for my printer	Go to **support.dell.com**
• Answers to technical service and support questions	**support.dell.com** provides several online tools, including:
• Documentation for my printer	• Solutions — Troubleshooting hints and tips, articles from technicians, and online courses

• Upgrades — Upgrade information for components, such as printer driver

• Customer Care — Contact information, order status, warranty, and repair information

• Downloads — Drivers

• Manuals — Printer documentation and product specifications

Go to **support.dell.com**. Select your region and fill in the requested details to access help tools and information.

3

Product Features

This chapter describes the product features and indicates their links.

Scanning to a USB Storage Device	**Multiple-Up (2-in-1 Copy)**
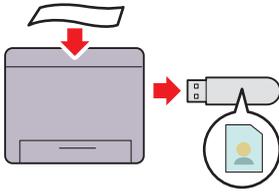
With Dell 1355cn/1355cnw Multifunction Color Printer, you don't need a PC to connect your USB storage device to save the scanned data. Insert your USB storage device in the port on the printer, and save the scanned data directly to your USB storage device.
For more information, see "Scanning to USB Storage Device" on page 280.
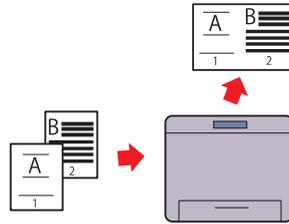
N-up Print enables you to print multiple pages on a single sheet of paper. This feature allows you to reduce the paper consumption.
For more information, see "Multiple-Up" on page 245.

2-Sided (Manual Duplex Print)

Print From USB Memory (USB Direct Print)
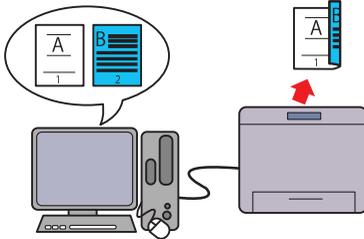
Manual Duplex Print is to print two or more pages on the front and back side of a single sheet of paper manually. This feature allows you to reduce the paper consumption.
For more information, see "Manual Duplex Printing (Windows Printer Driver Only)" on page 218.
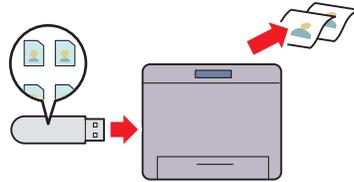
Print From USB Memory feature allows you to print directly from your USB storage device without starting your computer. Without requiring you to start your computer and an application, this feature allows quick printing with simple procedures.
For more information, see "Direct Print Using the USB Storage Device" on page 231.

Printing Through Wireless Connection (Wireless Print)
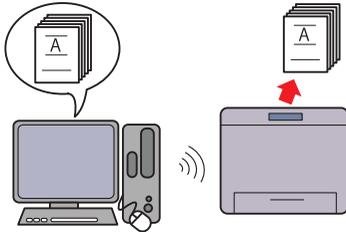
The Wireless LAN feature on your printer allows you to install the printer at any location, and enables printing without a wired connection to your computer.
For more information, see "Configuring Wireless Settings (Dell 1355cnw Multifunction Color Printer Only)" on page 85.

4

About the Printer

This chapter provides an overview of your Dell™ 1355cn/1355cnw Color Multifunction Printer.

Front View
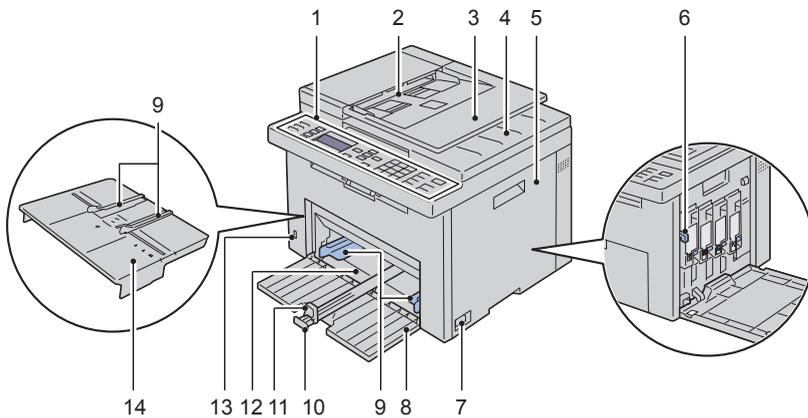
1	Operator Panel	2	Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)
3	Document Feeder Tray	4	Document Output Tray
5	Toner Access Cover	6	Print Head Cleaning Rod
7	Power Switch	8	Front Cover
9	Paper Width Guides	10	Length Guide
11	MPF Extension	12	Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)
13	Front USB Port	14	Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)

Rear View
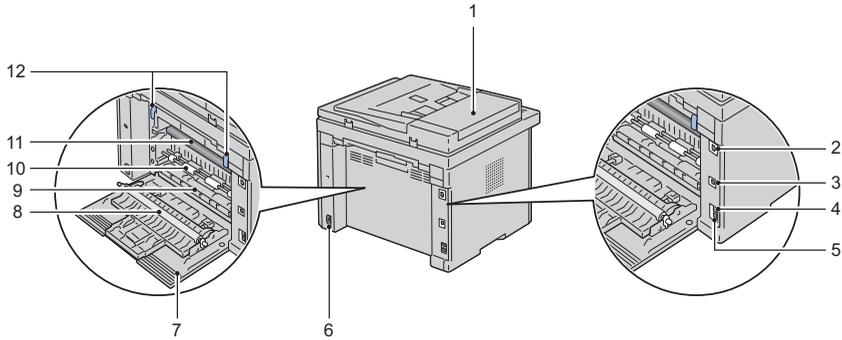
1	ADF Cover	2	Ethernet Port
3	USB Port	4	Wall Jack Connector
5	Phone Connector	6	Security Slot
7	Rear Cover	8	Transfer Roller
9	Paper Chute	10	Paper Feed Roller
11	Transfer Belt	12	Fuser Release Lever

Space Requirements

Place the printer at a location such that there is adequate space for using the printer feeder and covers.

100 mm/3.94 inches

596 mm/23.46 inches

132 mm/5.20 inches

262.5 mm/10.33 inches

410 mm/16.14 inches

379 mm/14.92 inches

338 mm/13.31 inches

292.5 mm/11.52 inches
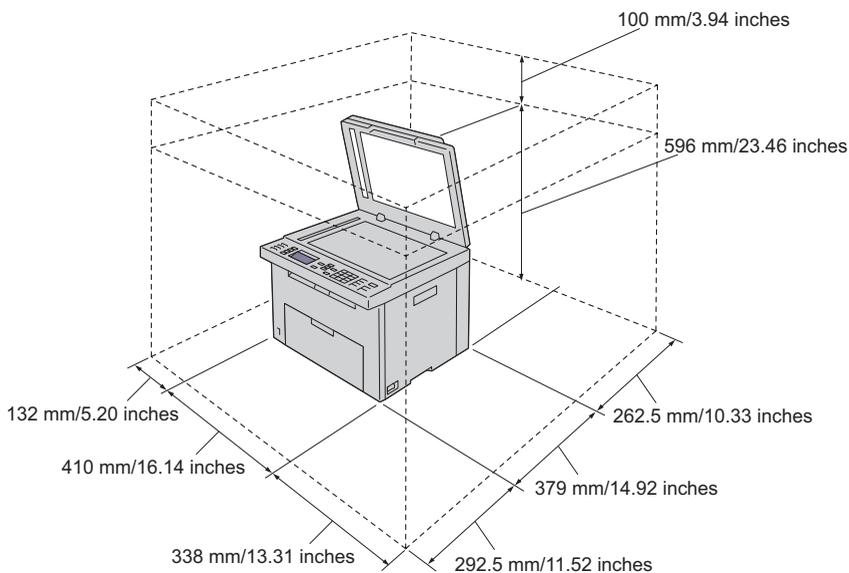
To avoid irregular screen image or malfunctioning of your printer, avoid placing the printer in direct sunlight with the single sheet feeder opened.

Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)
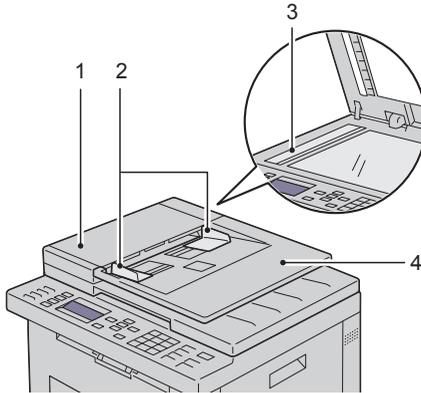
1	ADF Cover
2	Document Guides
3	Document Glass
4	Document Feeder Tray

Operator Panel
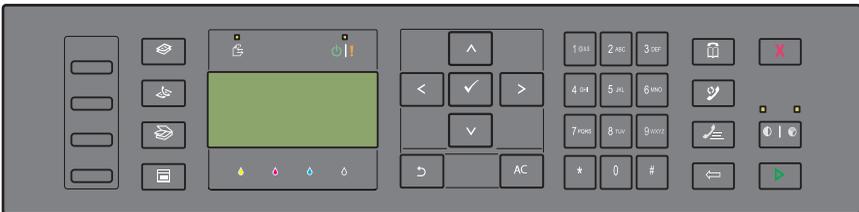
For more information on the operator panel, see "Operator Panel" on page 223.

Securing the Printer

To protect your printer from theft, you can use the optional Kensington lock.

Attach the Kensington lock to the security slot on your printer.

Security slot
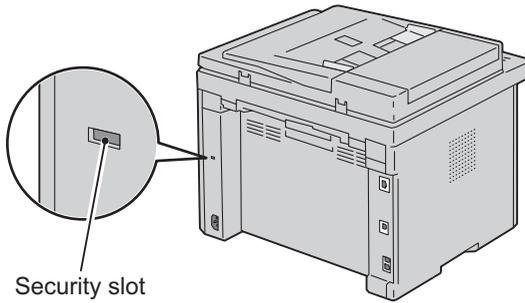
For details, see the operating instructions supplied with the Kensington lock.

Ordering Supplies

You can order consumables from Dell on the Internet when using a networked printer. Enter the IP address of your printer in your web browser, launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, and click the **Order Supplies at**: to order toner for your printer.

You can also order toner cartridges by the following method:

1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Dell Printers** → **Additional Color Software** → **Dell Supplies Management System**.

The **Dell Supplies Management System** window appears.

2 Select your printer from the **Select Printer Model** list.

3 If ordering from the web:

    a Select a web address from the **Select Reorder URL** list.

    b Click the **Visit Dell printer supplies ordering web site**.

    The **Dell 1355 Color MFP - Dell Supplies Management System** screen appears.

    c Enter the Service Tag, and then click **OK**.

    The Service Tag is located inside the toner access cover of your printer.

Dell supplies web site appears.

Service Tag	Express Service Code
xxxxxxx	000 000 000 00
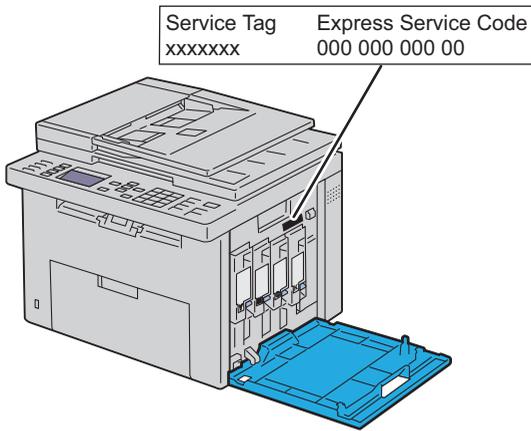
If you order by phone, call the number that appears in the **Order by Phone** section.

Setting Up Printer (Printer Setup)

5

Removing Packaging Material

1 Remove the packaging material from the printer.
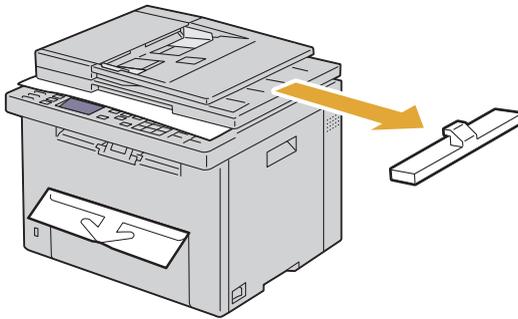
2 Lift and open the document cover.
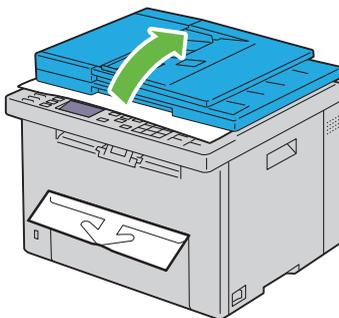
3 Remove the protective sheet from the ADF Glass.

6
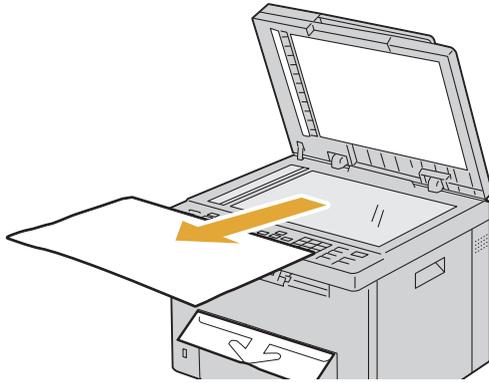
Connecting Your Printer

Your Dell™ 1355cn/1355cnw Color Multifunction Printer interconnection cable must meet the following requirements:

Connection type	Connection specifications
Wireless	IEEE 802.11b/802.11g
USB	USB 2.0 compatible
Ethernet	10 Base-T/100 Base-TX compatible
Wall jack connector	RJ11
Phone connector	RJ11
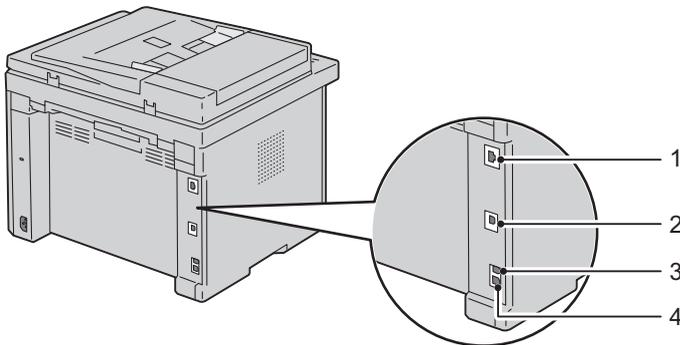
1	Ethernet Port	
2	USB Port	
3	Wall Jack Connector	**LINE**
4	Phone Connector	**PHONE**

Connecting Printer to Computer or Network

Direct Connection

A local printer is a printer which is directly attached to your computer using the USB cable. If your printer is attached to a network instead of your computer, skip this section and go to "Network Connection" on page 45.

USB Cable

The following operating systems support USB connection:

- Microsoft® Windows® XP
- Microsoft Windows XP 64-bit Edition
- Windows Server® 2003
- Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition
- Windows Server 2008
- Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition
- Windows Server 2008 R2
- Windows Vista®
- Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

- Windows 7
- Windows 7 64-bit Edition
- Mac OS$^{®}$ X 10.4.11/10.5/10.6

To attach the printer to a computer:

1 Ensure that the printer, computer, and any other attached devices are turned off and unplugged from the power source/outlet.

2 Connect the smaller USB connector into the USB port at the back of the printer.
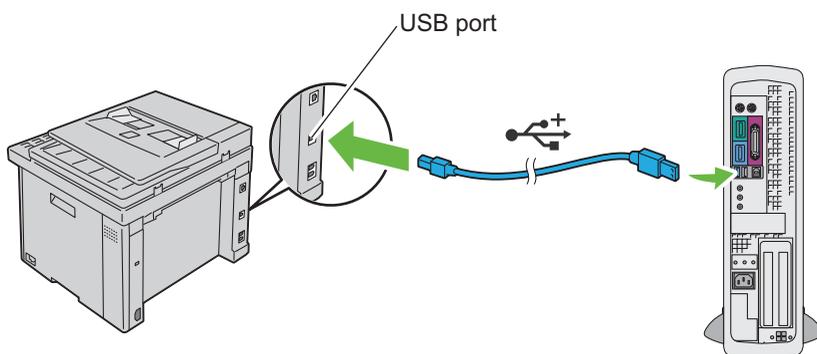
USB port

3 Connect the other end of the cable into a USB port of the computer.

    📝 **NOTE:** Do not connect the printer USB cable to the USB connector available on the keyboard.

Network Connection

To connect the printer to a network:

1 Ensure that the printer, computer and any other connected devices have been turned off and all cables have been disconnected.

2 Connect the Ethernet cable.
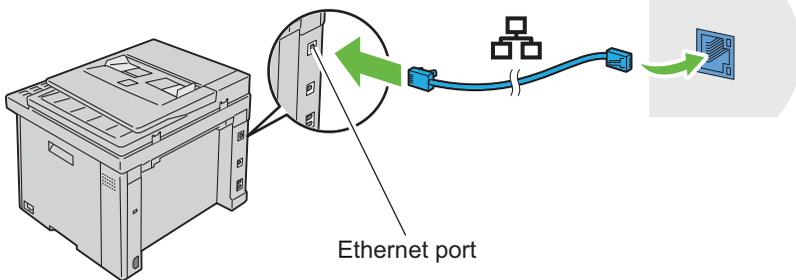
Ethernet port

✎ **NOTE:** Connect the Ethernet cable, only if you need to setup a wired connection.

To connect the printer to the network, connect one end of an Ethernet cable into the Ethernet port at the rear of the printer, and the other end to a LAN drop or hub.

To setup a wireless connection, see "Configuring Wireless Settings (Dell 1355cnw Multifunction Color Printer Only)" on page 85.

Turning On the Printer

⚠️ **CAUTION: Do not use extension cords or power strips.**

⚠️ **CAUTION: The printer should not be connected to a UPS system.**

1 Connect the power cable to the wall jack connector on the rear of your printer (see "Rear View" on page 34).
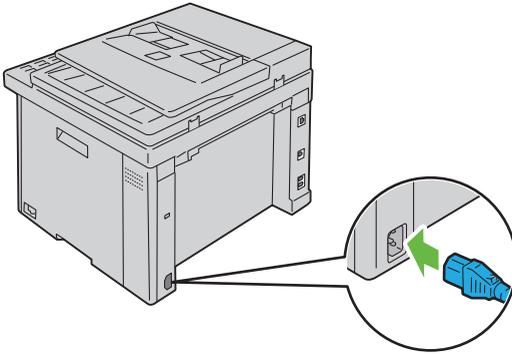
2 Connect the other end of the cable to the power source.

3 Turn on the printer.
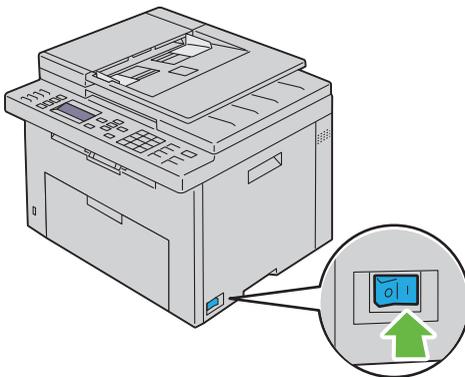
4 Follow the on-screen instructions in the operator panel to configure the initial settings of your printer.

Connecting the Telephone Line

✏️ **NOTE:** Do not connect your printer directly to a DSL (digital subscriber line). This may damage the printer. To use a DSL, you will need to use an appropriate DSL filter. Contact your service provider for the DSL filter.

1 Plug one end of a telephone line cord to the wall jack connector and the other end to an active wall jack.

Wall jack connector

LINE

To the wall jack
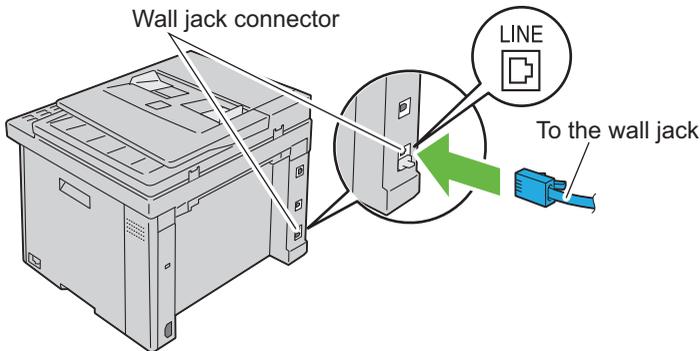
2 Remove the blue plug from the phone connector.

Phone connector

Blue plug
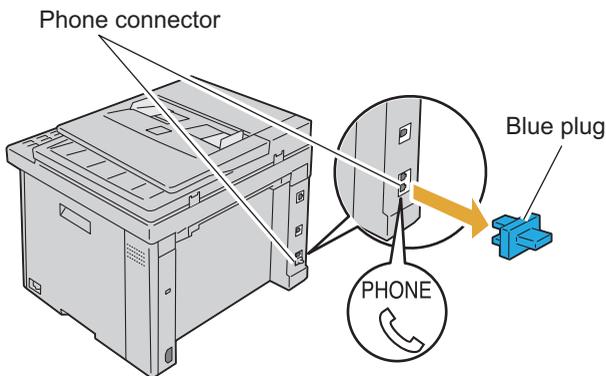
PHONE

3 To connect a telephone and/or answering machine to your printer, plug the telephone or answering machine line cord into the phone connector (📞 PHONE).

Phone connector

To an external telephone
or answering machine
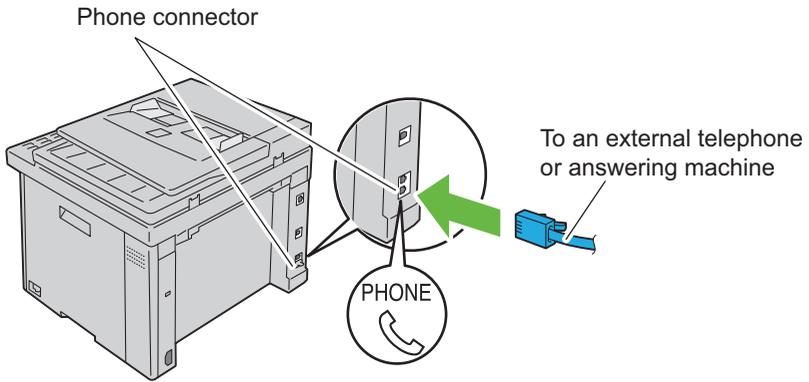
PHONE

If the phone communication is serial in your country (such as Germany, Sweden, Denmark, Austria, Belgium, Italy, France and Switzerland), and you are supplied with a yellow terminator, insert the yellow terminator into the phone connector ( ).

Phone connector

Yellow terminator

PHONE

7
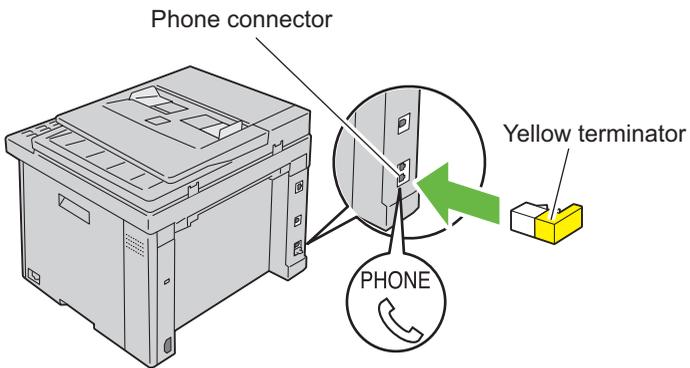
Setting the IP Address

Setting Initial Settings on the Operator Panel

You need to set the printer language, country, clock date, and time when you turn on printer for the first time.

When you turn on the printer, a wizard appears on the operator panel. Follow the steps below to set the initial settings.

NOTE: If you do not start configuring the initial settings, `Ready` appears on the operator panel in three minutes. After that, you can set the following initial setup by enabling Power on Wizard on the operator panel or Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool if needed.
For more information on operator panel, see "Understanding the Printer Menus" on page 359.
For more information on Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool, see "Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool" on page 123.

1 Ensure that `Please Select Language` is highlighted, and then select the language you want to use on the operator panel from the following drop-down list, and then press the ✓ button.

English
Français
Italiano
Deutsch
Español
Dansk
Nederlands
Norsk
Svenska

2 Press the ✓ button to start setting the country.

3 Ensure that `Please Select Country` is highlighted. Select your country from the drop-down list, and then press the ✓ button.

4 Ensure that `Please Select Time Zone` is highlighted. Select the appropriate time zone from the following drop-down list, and then press the ✓ button.

UTC -12:00
UTC -11:00
UTC -10:00
UTC -09:00
UTC -08:00
UTC -07:00
UTC -06:00
UTC -05:00
UTC -04:00
UTC -03:30
UTC -03:00
UTC -02:00
UTC -01:00
UTC 00:00
UTC +01:00
UTC +02:00
UTC +03:00
UTC +03:30
UTC +04:00
UTC +04:30
UTC +05:00
UTC +05:30
UTC +05:45
UTC +06:00

UTC +06:30
UTC +07:00
UTC +08:00
UTC +09:00
UTC +09:30
UTC +10:00
UTC +11:00
UTC +12:00
UTC +13:00

5 Press the ▼ button until `Please Enter Date` is highlighted. Specify the current date, and then press the ✓ button.

6 Press the ▼ button until `Please Enter Time` is highlighted. Specify the current time, and then press the ✓ button.

7 Press the ✓ button for Fax Setup.

   If you want to skip the Fax Setup, press the ▶ (**Start**) button and then restart the printer.

8 Press the ▼ button until `Please Enter Fax Number` is highlighted. enter your fax number, and then press the ✓ button.

9 Press the ▼ button until `Please Enter Name` is highlighted. Enter a name, and then press the ✓ button.

10 Press the ✓ button, and then restart the printer.

Assigning an IP Address (for IPv4 Mode)

NOTE: When you assign an IP address manually in **IPv6 Mode**, use the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. To open the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, use the link local address. To check a link local address, see "Printing and Checking the Printer Settings Page" on page 57.

An IP address is a unique number that consists of four sections that are delimited by a period and can include up to three digits in each section, for example, `111.222.33.44`.

Assigning an IP address that is already in use can cause network performance issues.

NOTE: Assigning an IP address is considered as an advanced function and is normally done by a system administrator.

NOTE: Depending on the address class, the range of the IP address assigned may be different. On Class A, for example, an IP address in the range from `0.0.0.0` to `127.255.255.255` will be assigned. For assignment of IP addresses, contact your system administrator.

You can assign the IP address by using the operator panel or using the tool box.

The Operator Panel

For more information on using your operator panel, see "Operator Panel" on page 223.

1   Turn on the printer.

    Ensure that `Ready` message appears on the LCD panel.

2   Press the ☰ (**Menu**) button.

3   Press the ⋁ button until `System` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

4   Press the ⋁ button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

5   Press the ⋁ button until `Network` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

6   Press the ⋁ button until `TCP/IP` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

7   Press the ⋁ button until `IPv4` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

8   Ensure that `Get IP Address` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

9   Ensure that `Panel` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

10 Ensure that `Get IP Address` is highlighted.

11 Press the ⋁ button until `IP Address` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

The cursor is located at the first three digits of the IP address.

12   Enter the value of the IP address using the numeric keypad.

13   Press the **>** button.

The next three digits are highlighted.

14   Repeat step 12 and step 13 to enter all of the digits in the IP address, and then press the ✓ button.

15   Ensure that `IP Address` is highlighted.

16   Press the **V** button until `Subnet Mask` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

The cursor is located at the first three digits of the subnet mask.

17   Enter the value of the subnet mask using the numeric keypad.

18   Press the **>** button.

The next three digits are highlighted.

19   Repeat step 17 and step 18 to set subnet mask, and then press the ✓ button.

20   Press the **V** button and ensure that `Subnet Mask` is highlighted.

21   Press the **V** button until `Gateway Address` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

The cursor is located at the first three digits of the gateway address.

22   Enter the value of the gateway address using the numeric keypad.

23   Press the **>** button.

The next three digits are highlighted.

24   Repeat step 22 and step 23 to set gateway address, and then press the ✓ button.

25   Turn off and turn on the printer.

The Tool Box

NOTE: When you use IPv6 Mode for network printing, the Tool Box cannot be used to assign an IP address.

1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Dell Printers** → **Dell 1355 Multifunction Color Printer** → **Tool Box**.

> ✍ **NOTE:** The **Select Printer** dialog box opens in this step, when multiple printer drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of **Dell 1355 Multifunction Color Printer** listed in Printer Name, and then click OK.

The **Tool Box** opens.

2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.

3 Select **TCP/IP Settings** from the list at the left side of the page.

The **TCP/IP Settings** page is displayed.

4 Select the mode from **IP Address Mode**, and then enter the values in IP Address, **Subnet Mask**, and **Gateway Address**.

5 Press the **Apply New Settings** button to take effect.

The IP address is assigned to your printer. To verify the setting, open the web browser on any computer connected to the network and enter the IP address into the address bar on the browser. If the IP address is set up correctly, the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool displays in your browser.

You can also assign the IP address to the printer when installing the printer drivers with installer. When you use the **Network Installation** feature, and the Get IP Address is set to AutoIP on the operator panel menu, you can set the IP address from 0.0.0.0 to the desired IP address on the printer selection window.

Verifying the IP Settings

1 Print the printer settings page.

See "Printing and Checking the Printer Settings Page" on page 57.

2 Look under the **TCP/IP** heading on the printer settings page to ensure that the IP address, subnet mask, and gateway are appropriate.

To verify if the printer is active on the network, run the ping command in your computer:

1 Click **Start**, and select **Run**.

2 Type cmd, and then press **OK**.

A black window is displayed.

3 Type ping `xx.xx.xx.xx` (where `xx.xx.xx.xx` is the IP address of your printer).

4 Reply from the IP address denotes printer is active on the network.

Printing and Checking the Printer Settings Page

Print the printer settings page and check your printer's IP address.

The Operator Panel

1 Press the ▤ (**Menu**) button.

2 Press the ∨ button until `System` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

3 Press the ∨ button until `Report/List` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

4 Ensure that `System Settings` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

The system settings page is printed.

5 Confirm the IP address next to **IP Address** under **Wired Network** on the printer settings page. If the IP address is `0.0.0.0`, wait for a few minutes to resolve the IP address automatically, and then print the system settings page again.
If the IP address is not resolved automatically, see "Assigning an IP Address (for IPv4 Mode)" on page 53.

The Tool Box

✎ **NOTE:**

1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Dell Printers** → **Dell 1355 Multifunction Color Printer** → **Tool Box**.

✎ **NOTE:** The **Select Printer** dialog box opens in this step, when multiple printer drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of **Dell 1355 Multifunction Color Printer** listed in **Printer Name**, and then click **OK**.

The **Tool Box** opens.

2 Click the **Printer Settings Report** tab.

3 Select **Reports** from the list at the left side of the page.

The **Reports** page is displayed.

4 Click the **Printer Settings** button.

The printer settings page is printed.

If the IP address is `0.0.0.0` (the factory default) or `169.254.xx.xx`, an IP address has not been assigned. To assign an IP address for your printer, see "Assigning an IP Address (for IPv4 Mode)" on page 53.

8

Loading Paper

📝 **NOTE:** To avoid paper jams, do not remove the priority sheet inserter while a printing is in progress.

📝 **NOTE:** Use only laser print media. Do not use ink jet paper in your printer.

📝 **NOTE:** For printing envelopes, see "Loading Print Media" on page 201.

Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)

1   Open the front cover by pulling out the instruction sheet.
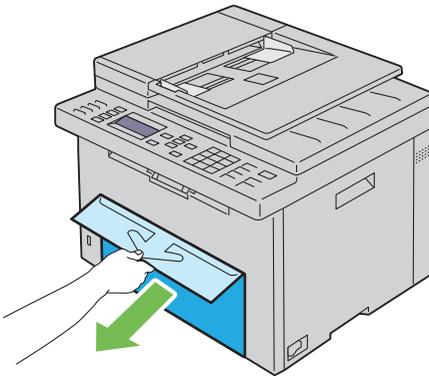
2   Pull the priority sheet inserter (PSI) out.
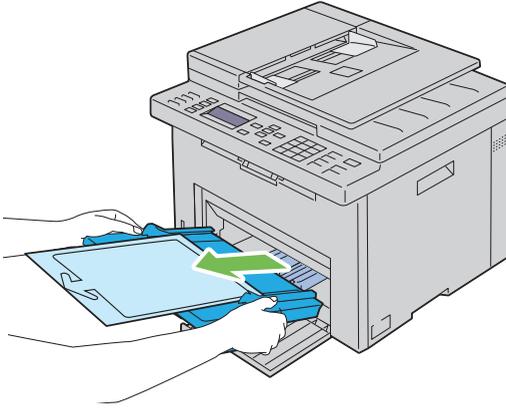
3 Remove the instruction sheet attached to the PSI with adhesive tape.
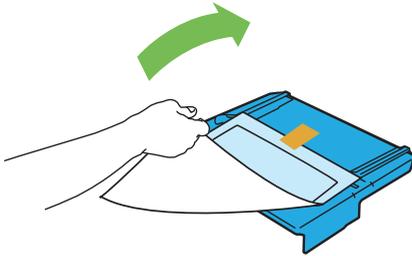
✍ **NOTE:** Read the instruction sheet before you use the PSI.

4 Pull the length guide forward until it stops.
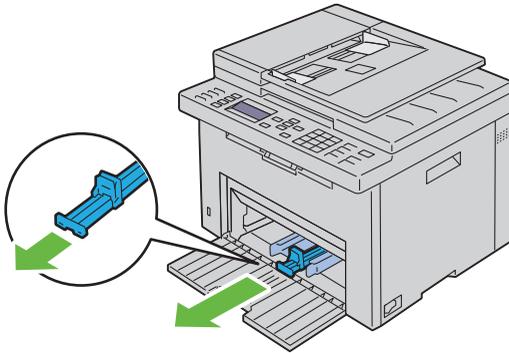
5 Pull the MPF extension forward until it stops.
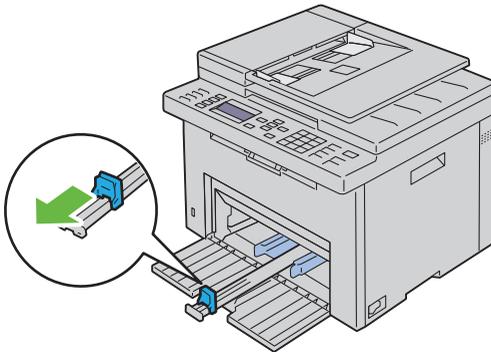
6 Adjust the paper width guides to their maximum width.
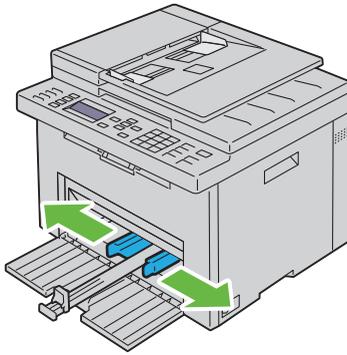
7 Before loading the print media, flex the sheets back and forth, and then fan them. Straighten the edges of the stack on a level surface.
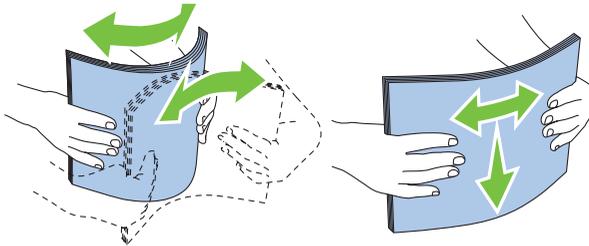
8 Load paper on the MPF with the top edge first and with the recommended print side facing up.
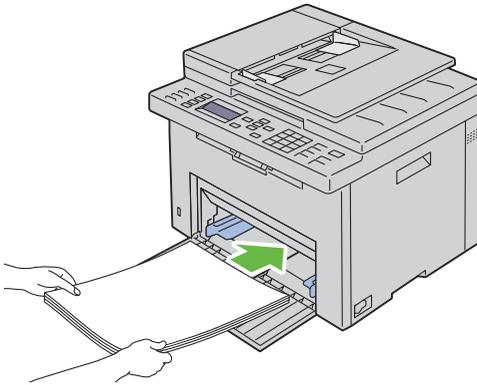
9 Adjust the width guides and length guides until they rest lightly against the edges of the stack of print media.
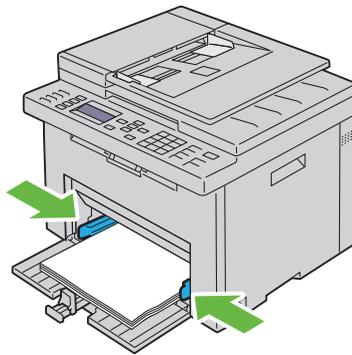
10 Slide the length guide towards the printer until it touches the print media.
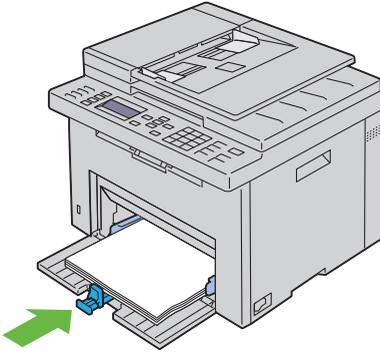
NOTE: Depending on the size of print media, first slide the MPF extension backward until it stops, and then pinch the length guide and slide it backward until it touches print media.
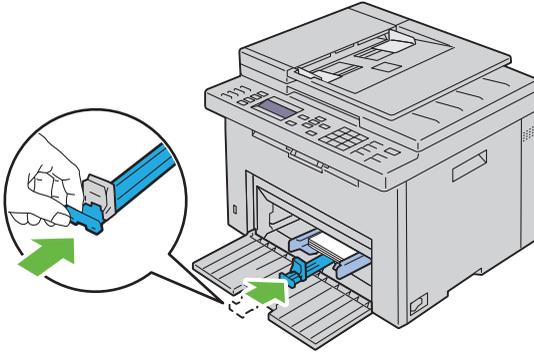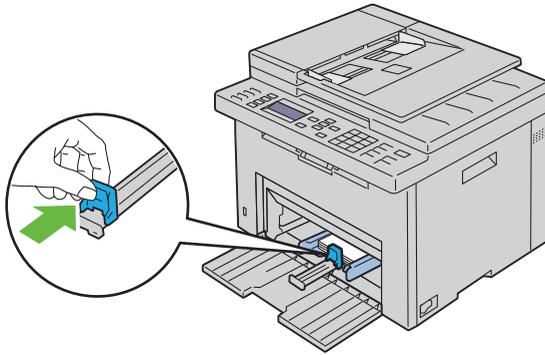
11 Insert the PSI into the printer and then align the PSI to the marking on the paper tray.
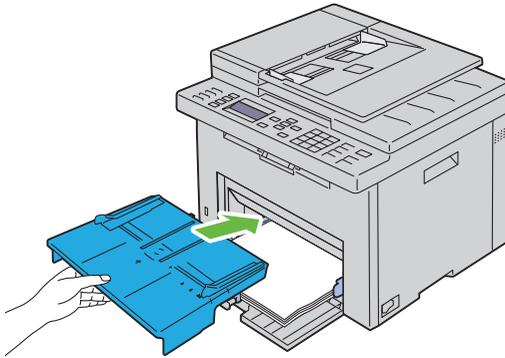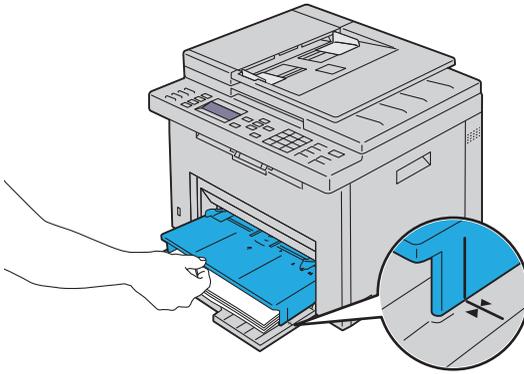
12 Select the paper type from the printer driver if the loaded print media is not standard plain paper. If a user-specified print media is loaded in the MPF, you must specify the paper size setting by using the printer driver.

Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)

1 Open the front cover.
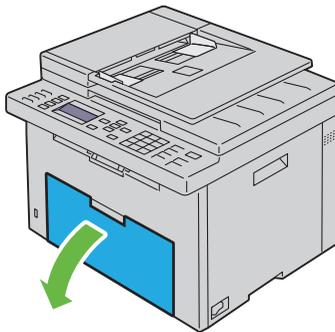
2 Slide the PSI forward, and then align the PSI to the marking on the paper tray.
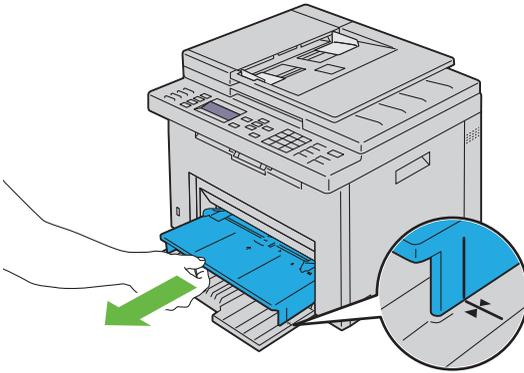
3 Before loading the print media, flex the sheets back and forth, and then fan them. Straighten the edges of the stack on a level surface.
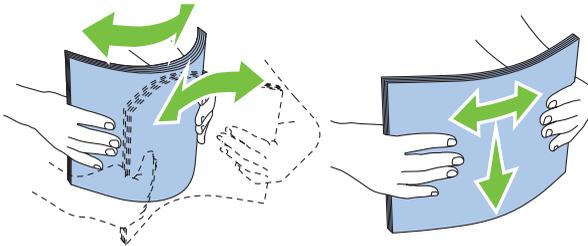
4 Load print media on the PSI with the top edge first and with the recommended print side facing up.
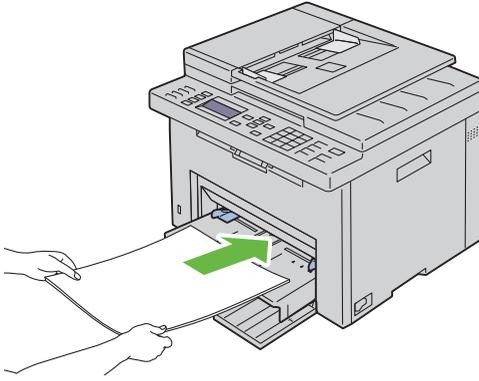
5 Adjust the width guides until they rest lightly against the edges of the stack of print media.
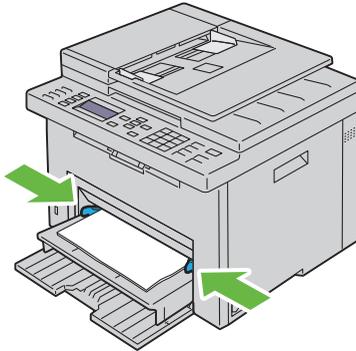
6 Select the paper type from the printer driver if the loaded print media is not standard plain paper. If a user-specified print media is loaded in the PSI, you must specify the paper size setting by using the printer driver.

9

Installing Printer Drivers on Computers Running Windows

Identifying Printer Driver Pre-install Status (For Network Connection Setup)

Before installing the printer driver on your computer, print the printer settings page to check the IP address of your printer.

The Operator Panel

1   Press the ☰ (**Menu**) button.

2   Press the ∨ button until System is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

3   Press the ∨ button until Report/List is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

4   Ensure that System Settings is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

    The system settings page is printed.

5   Find the IP address under Wired Network/Wireless Network on the printer settings page.

    If the IP address is 0.0.0.0, wait for a few minutes to resolve the IP address automatically, and then print the system settings page again.

    If the IP address is not resolved automatically, see "Assigning an IP Address (for IPv4 Mode)" on page 53.

The Tool Box

1   Click **Start**→ **All Programs**→ **Dell Printers**→ **Dell 1355 Multifunction Color Printer**→ **Tool Box**.

> 📝 **NOTE:** When multiple printer drivers are installed on your computer, the **Select Printer** window opens. In this case, click the name of **Dell 1355cnw Color MFP** listed in **Printer Name**.

The **Tool Box** opens.

2 Select **TCP/IP Settings** from the list on the left side of the page.

The **TCP/IP Settings** page appears.

If the IP address shows `0.0.0.0` (the factory default) or `169.254.xx.xx`, an IP address has not been assigned. To assign one for your printer, see "Assigning an IP Address (for IPv4 Mode)" on page 53.

Disabling the firewall before installing your printer

> 📝 **NOTE:** For Windows XP, Service Pack 2 or 3 must be installed.

If you are running one of the following operating systems, you must disable the firewall before installing the Dell printer software:

- Windows 7
- Windows Vista
- Windows Server 2008 R2
- Windows Server 2008
- Windows XP

1 Click **Start→ Help and Support**.

> 📝 **NOTE:** For Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7 operating systems, if you use **Online Help**, switch to **Offline Help** on **Windows Help and Support** window.

2 In the **Search** box, type `firewall` and then press **Enter**.

In the list, click **Turn Windows Firewall on or off** and then follow the instructions on the screen.

Enable the firewall after the installation of the Dell printer software is complete.

Inserting the Drivers and Utility CD

1 Insert the *Drivers and Utilities* CD into your computer to start **Easy Setup Navigator**.

NOTE: If the CD does not automatically launch, click **Start**→ **All Programs** (for Windows Vista and Windows 7)→ **Accessories** (for Windows Vista and Windows 7)→ **Run**, and then type `D:\setup_assist.exe` (where **D** is the drive letter of your CD), and then click **OK**.

Direct Connection Setup

For installing host-based printer driver

1   Click **Software Installation**.

2   Select **Personal Installation**, and then click **Next**.

3   Follow the on-screen instructions to connect the computer and the printer with a USB cable, and then turn the printer on.

The Plug and Play installation starts and the installation software proceeds to the next page automatically.

NOTE: If the installation software does not automatically proceed to the next page, click **Install**.

4   Click **Finish** to exit the wizard when the **Congratulations!** screen appears. If necessary, click **Print Test Page** to print a test page.

USB Printing

A personal printer is a printer attached to your computer or a print server using a USB. If your printer is attached to a network and not your computer, see "Network Connection Setup" on page 74.

For installing XML Paper Specification (XPS) printer driver

NOTE: Download and install the XPS printer driver at **support.dell.com/support.**

NOTE: XPS driver is supported on the following operating systems: Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition.

Windows Vista or Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

1   Extract the zip file you downloaded to your desired location.

2   Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**→ **Hardware and Sound**→ **Printers**.

3   Click **Add a printer**.

4 Click **Add a local printer**.

5 Select the port connected to this product, and then click **Next**.

6 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.

7 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted folder in step 1.

8 Click **OK**.

9 Select your printer name and click **Next**.

10 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box. To use this printer as the default printer, select the check box displayed under the **Printer name**. Click **Next**.

Installation starts.

If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Continue**.

NOTE: If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Continue**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.

11 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.

12 Click **Finish**.

Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

NOTE: You must log in as an administrator.

1 Extract the zip file you downloaded to your desired location.

2 Click **Start→ Control Panel→ Hardware and Sound→ Printers**.

3 Click **Add a printer**.

4 Click **Add a local printer**.

5 Select the port connected to this product, and then click **Next**.

6 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.

7 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted folder in step 1.

8 Click **OK**.

9 Select your printer name and click **Next**.

10 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box.

To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box. Click **Next**.

Installation starts.

11 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**. If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**. Click **Next**.

12 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.

13 Click **Finish**.

Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, or Windows Server 2008 R2

1 Extract the zip file you downloaded to your desired location.

2 Click **Start→ Devices and Printers**.

3 Click **Add a printer**.

4 When you use Windows Server 2008 R2, click **Add a local or network printer as an administrator**.

If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Yes**.

> ![note icon] **NOTE:** If you are an administrator on the computer, click Yes; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.

5 Click **Add a local printer**.

6 Select the port connected to this product, and then click **Next**.

7 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.

8 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted folder in step 1.

9 Click **OK**.

10 Select your printer name and click **Next**.

11 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the Printer name box, and then click **Next**.

Installation starts.

12 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**. If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**. Click **Next**.

13 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page. To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box.

14 Click **Finish**.

Network Connection Setup

Network Printer Setup on a Local Network

For installing host-based printer driver

1 Click **Software Installation**.

2 Select **Network Installation**, and then click **Next**.

3 Select **Local Installation**, and then click **Next**.

4 Select the printer you want to install from the printer list, and then click **Next**. If the target printer is not displayed on the list, click **Refresh** to refresh the list or click **Add Printer** to add a printer to the list manually. You may specify the IP address and port name at this point.

If you have installed this printer on the server computer, select **I am setting up this printer on a server** check box.

> **NOTE:** When using AutoIP, 0.0.0.0 is displayed in the installer. Before you can continue, you must enter a valid IP address.

> **NOTE:** If you are running any of the following operating systems, a Windows Security Alert is displayed:
> - Windows Vista
> - Windows Vista 64-bit Edition
> - Windows Server 2008
> - Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition
> - Windows Server 2008 R2 64-bit Edition
> - Windows 7
> - Windows 7 64-bit Edition

To continue installing the host-based printer driver, click **Unblock** or **Allow access** (for Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7).

5 Specify the printer settings, and then click **Next**.

a Enter the printer name.

b If you want other users on the network to access this printer, select **Share this printer** with other computers on the network, and then enter a share name that users can identify.

c If you want to set a printer as the default, select the **Set this printer** as default check box.

6 Select the software and documentation you want to install, and then click **Next**. You can specify folders in which to install the Dell software and documentation. To change the folders, click **Browse**.

7 Click **Finish** to exit the wizard when the **Congratulations!** screen appears. If necessary, click **Print Test Page** to print a test page.

For installing XML Paper Specification (XPS) printer driver

NOTE: Download and install the XPS printer driver at **support.dell.com/support.**

NOTE: XPS driver is supported on the following operating systems: Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition.

Windows Vista or Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

1 Extract the zip file you downloaded to your desired location.

2 Click **Start→ Control Panel→ Hardware and Sound→ Printers**.

3 Click **Add a printer**.

4 Click **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.

5 Select printer or click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.

6 Select **Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or hostname**, and then click **Next**.

7 Select **TCP/IP Device** for **Device type**, and enter the IP address for **Hostname or IP address**, and then click **Next**.

If the **User Account Control Continue** dialog box appears, click **Continue**.

NOTE: If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Continue**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.

8 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.

9 Click **Browse**, then select the extracted folder in step 1, and then click **OK**.

10 Select your printer name and click **Next**.

11 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.

To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box.

Installation starts.

If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Continue**.

> **NOTE:** If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Continue**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.

12 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.

13 Click **Finish**.

Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

> **NOTE:** You must log in as an administrator.

1 Extract the zip file you downloaded to your desired location.

2 Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**→ **Hardware and Sound**→ **Printers**.

3 Click **Add a printer**.

4 Click **Add a network**, **wireless or Bluetooth printer**.

5 Select your printer or click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.

When you select your printer, go to step 8.

When you click **The printer that I want isn't listed**, go to step 6.

6 Select **Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or hostname**, and then click **Next**.

7 Select **TCP/IP Device** from **Device type**, and enter the IP address for **Hostname or IP address**, and then click **Next**.

If the **User Account Control Continue** dialog box appears, click **Continue**.

8 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.

9 Click **Browse**, then select the extracted folder in step 1, and then click **OK**.

10 Select your printer name and click **Next**.

11 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.

To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box.

Installation starts.

12 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**. If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**. Click **Next**.

13 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.

14 Click **Finish**.

Windows Server 2008 R2

1 Extract the zip file you downloaded to your desired location.

2 Click **Start→ Devices and Printers**.

3 Click **Add a printer**.

4 Click **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.

5 Select your printer or click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.

> **NOTE:** When you click **The printer that I want isn't listed**, **Find a printer by name or TCP/IP address** screen appears. Find your printer on this screen.

If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Yes**.

> **NOTE:** If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Yes**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.

6 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.

7 Click **Browse**, then select the extracted folder in step 1, and then click **OK**.

8 Select your printer name and click **Next**.

9 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.

10 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**. If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**.

11 Click **Next**.

Installation starts.

12 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page. To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box.

13 Click **Finish**.

Windows 7 or Windows 7 64-bit Edition

1 Extract the zip file you downloaded to your desired location.

2 Click **Start**→ **Devices and Printers**.

3 Click **Add a printer**.

4 Click **Add a network**, **wireless or Bluetooth printer**.

5 Select your printer or click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.

When you select your printer, go to step 8.

When you click **The printer that I want isn't listed**, go to step 6.

6 Select **Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or host name**, and then click **Next**.

7 Select **TCP/IP Device** from **Device type**, and enter the IP address for **Hostname or IP address**, and then click **Next**.

If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Yes**.

> 📝 **NOTE:** If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Yes**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.

8 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.

9 Click **Browse**, then select the extracted folder in step 1, and then click **OK**.

10 Select your printer name and click **Next**.

11 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.

Installation starts.

12 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page. To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box.

13 Click **Finish**.

> **NOTE:** You can set up the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** to send you an e-mail when the printer needs supplies or intervention.

For more information about **E-Mail Alert**, see "E-Mail Alert" on page 126.

Network Printer Setup on a Remote Network

Before Installation

Before you start remote installation, perform the following procedures.

Allow Print Spooler to Accept Client Connections

> **NOTE:** This step is required for Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7, and Windows 7 64-bit Edition.

For Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Vista, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Server 2008:

1   Click **Start** → **All Programs** (for Windows Vista only) → **Accessories** (for Windows Vista only) → **Run**.

2   Type gpedit.msc, and then click **OK**.

3   Click **Computer Configuration** → **Administrative Templates** → **Printers**.

4   Right-click **Allow Print Spooler to accept client connections** and select **Properties**.

5   On the **Setting** tab, select **Enabled**, and then click **OK**.

6   Restart the computer.

For Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7:

1   Click **Start** → **All Programs** (for Windows 7 only) → **Accessories** (for Windows 7 only) → **Run**.

2   Type gpedit.msc, and then click **OK**.

3   Click **Computer Configuration** → **Administrative Templates** → **Printers**.

4   Right-click **Allow Print Spooler to accept client connections** and select **Edit**.

5   Select **Enabled**, and then click **OK**.

6   Restart the computer.

Share the Firewall File and Printer

✎ **NOTE:** This step is required for Windows XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7, and Windows 7 64-bit Edition.

For Windows XP:

1 Click **start** → **Control Panel**.

2 Select **Security Center**.

3 Click **Windows Firewall**.

4 On the **Exceptions** tab, check the **File and Printer Sharing** check box, and then click **OK**.

For Windows Vista:

1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel**.

2 Select **Security**.

3 Click **Windows Firewall**.

4 Click **Change settings**.

5 Click **Continue**.

6 On the **Exceptions** tab, check the **File and Printer Sharing** check box, and then click **OK**.

For Windows Server 2008:

1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel**.

2 Double-click **Windows Firewall**.

3 Click **Change settings**.

4 On the **Exceptions** tab, check the **File and Printer Sharing** check box, and then click **OK**.

For Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7:

1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel**.

2 Select **System and Security**.

3 Click **Windows Firewall**.

4 Click **Allow a program or feature through Windows Firewall**.

5 If the check boxes under **Allowed programs and features:** are dimmed, click Change settings, and then click **Yes**.

6 Check the **Name** check box. **Home/Work (Private)** or **Public** check box is automatically selected according to your settings.

If **File and Printer Sharing Properties** dialog box appears, click **OK**.

7 Click **OK**.

Start Remote Registry

📝 **NOTE:** This step is required for Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows 7, and Windows 7 64-bit Edition.

1 Click **Start → Control Panel**.

2 Select **System and Maintenance (System and Security** for Windows 7).

3 Click **Administrative Tools**.

4 Double-click **Services**.

5 Click **Continue** (for Windows Vista only).

6 Right-click **Remote Registry** and select **Start**.

7 Right-click **Remote Registry** and select **Properties**.

8 Change **Startup type:** to **Automatic**, and then click **OK**.

Disable User Account Control

📝 **NOTE:** Disabling the User Account Control might leave the system vulnerable to virus attacks.

📝 **NOTE:** This step is required for Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7, and Windows 7 64-bit Edition.

For Windows Vista:

1 Click **Start → Control Panel**.

2 Select **User Accounts**.

3 Click **User Accounts**.

4 Click **Turn User Account Control on or off**.

5 Click **Continue**.

6 Clear the **Use User Account Control (UAC) to help protect your computer** check box.

7 Click **OK**.

8 Restart the computer.

For Windows Server 2008:

1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel**.

2 Double-click **User Accounts**.

3 Click **Turn User Account Control on or off**.

4 Click **Continue**.

5 Clear the **Use User Account Control (UAC) to help protect your computer** check box.

6 Click **OK**.

7 Restart the computer.

For Windows Server 2008 R2:

1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel**.

2 Select **User Accounts**.

3 Click **User Accounts**.

4 Click **Change User Account Control settings**.

5 Move the slider to the bottom, and then click **OK**.

6 Click **Yes**.

7 Click **OK**.

8 Click **Yes**.

9 Restart the computer.

For Windows 7:

1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel**.

2 Select **User Accounts and Family Safety**.

3 Click **User Accounts**.

4 Click **Change User Account Control Settings**.

5 Move the slider to the bottom, and then click **OK**.

6 Click **Yes** in **User Account Control** dialog box.

7 Restart the computer.

Enable Network Discovery and File Sharing for all Public Networks

NOTE: This step is required when you use Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7, and Windows 7 64-bit Edition for the server computer.

For Windows 7, and Windows 7 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2

1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Network and Internet** → **Network and Sharing Center** → **Change advanced sharing settings**.

2 To allow your computer to be found on the network, and to allow other computers on the network to share the files and folders on your computer, click **Turn on network discovery**.

3 Click **Save changes**.

4 If you see the **User Account Control** dialog box, click **Yes**.

For Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition:

1 Click **Start** → **Network**.

2 Right-click **Network** and select **Properties**.

The **Network an Sharing Center** screen appears.

3 Click the down arrow button next to either **Network discovery**.

4 To allow your computer to be found on the network, and to allow other computers on the network to share the files and folders on your computer, click **Turn on network discovery**.

5 Click **Apply**.

6 If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Continue**.

Disable Simple File Sharing

NOTE: This step is required for Windows XP, and Windows XP 64-bit Edition.

1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel**.

2 Select **Appearance and Themes**.

3 Select **Folder Options**.

4 On the **View** tab, clear the **Use simple file sharing (Recommended)** check box, and then click **OK**.

5 Click **Start** → **Control Panel**.

6 Select **Performance and Maintenance**.

7 Select **Administrative Tools**.

8 Double-click **Local Security Policy**.

9 Click **Local Policies** → **Security Options**.

10 Right-click **Network access: Sharing and security model for local accounts** and select **Properties**.

11 Ensure that **Classic - local users authenticate as themselves** is selected.

12 Click **OK**.

Installing the Printer Driver

NOTE: Installation on Windows XP Home Edition, Windows Vista Home Basic, Windows Vista Home Premium, Windows Vista x64 Home Basic, Windows Vista x64 Home Premium, Windows 7 Starter, Windows 7 Home Basic, Windows 7 Home Premium, Windows 7 x64 Home Basic, and Windows 7 x64 Home Premium is not supported.

1 Insert the *Drivers and Utilities* CD provided with the printer in your computer. The **Easy Setup Navigator** file launches automatically.

2 Click **Software Installation**.

The **Install Printer Driver and Software** screen appears.

3 Select **Network Installation**, and then click **Next**.

4 Select **Remote Installation**, and then click **Next**.

5 Enter the Administrator user name and password of the client computer, then select the clients or servers, and then **Next**.

NOTE: If you are running any of the following operating systems, a Windows Security Alert is displayed:
- Windows Vista
- Windows Vista 64-bit Edition
- Windows Server 2008
- Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition
- Windows Server 2008 R2 64-bit Edition
- Windows 7
- Windows 7 64-bit Edition

To continue installing the host-based printer driver, click **Unblock or Allow access** (for Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7).

6 Check if the printer to be installed is listed in **Select Printer**, and then click **Next**.

📖 **NOTE:** If the printer to be installed is not listed in **Select Printer**, try the following steps:

- Click **Refresh** to update the information.
- Click **Add Printer**, and then enter a port name (any alphanumeric string) and an existing IP address for the printer.

7 Select the required items on the **Software and Documentation**, and then click **Install**.

8 Click **Finish** to exit this tool.

Configuring Wireless Settings (Dell 1355cnw Multifunction Color Printer Only)

This section describes how to configure wireless settings through **Easy Setup Navigator**.

The specifications of wireless setting function are described below:

Item	Specification
Connectivity	Wireless
Connectivity Standard	IEEE 802.11b/802.11g compliant
Bandwidth	2.4 GHz
Data Transfer Rate	802.11g: 54, 48, 36, 24, 18, 12, 9, 6 Mbps
	802.11b: 11, 5.5, 2, 1 Mbps
Security	WEP (64/128bits), WPA-PSK (TKIP, AES), WPA-2PSK (AES)
Certifications	Wifi, WPA2.0 (Personal)
Wifi Protected Setup(WPS)	Push Button Configuration (PBC), Personal Identification Number (PIN)

You can select a method to configure a wireless setting from the following:

Wizard Setup through USB connection	
Advanced Setup through	Ethernet connection
	Operator Panel
	Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool
	WPS-PIN[*1]
	WPS-PBC[*2]

[*1] WPS-PIN (Wi-Fi® Protected Setup-Personal Identification Number) is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration, by entering PIN assignments in the printer and computer. This setting, performed through access point, is available only when the access points of your wireless router supports WPS.

[*2] WPS-PBC (Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Push Button Configuration) is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration, by pressing the button provided on the access point via wireless routers, and then performing WPS-PBC setting on the operator panel. This setting is available only when the access point supports WPS.

📝 **NOTE:** For information on how to install a wireless, see "Using Wizard Setup to Configure Wireless Settings" on page 86 or "Using Advanced Setup to Configure Wireless Settings" on page 88.

Using Wizard Setup to Configure Wireless Settings

1 Insert the *Drivers and Utilities* CD provided with the printer in your computer. The **Easy Setup Navigator** file launches automatically.

2 Click **Guided Setup**.

3 Click **Connect Your Printer**.

Select your type of connection screen appears.

4 Select **Wireless Connection**, and then click **Next**.

The setting method selection window appears.

5 Ensure that **Wizard** is selected, and then click **Next**.

6 Follow the instructions until the **Check Setup** screen appears.

7 Confirm there are no errors displayed in the operator panel, and then click **NO**.

If you see any errors, click **YES** and follow the instruction.

8 Click **Start installation**.

9 Select **Local Installation**, and then click **Next**.

10 Check if the printer to be installed is listed in the **Select Printer** screen, and then click **Next**.

> ✍ **NOTE:** If the printer to be installed is not listed in the **Select Printer** screen, try the following steps:
> - Click **Refresh** to update the information.
> - Click **Add Printer,** and then enter the details of the printer manually.

11 Select the required items on the **Enter Printer Settings** screen, and then click **Next**.

12 Select the software to be installed, and then click **Install**.

The **Congratulations!** screen appears.

13 Click **Finish** to exit this tool.

The wireless configuration is complete.

Using Advanced Setup to Configure Wireless Settings

To use the Advanced Setup, display the Configuration Wireless Setting screen.

Displaying Configure Wireless Settings Screen

1 Insert the *Drivers and Utilities* CD provided with the printer in your computer. The **Easy Setup Navigator** file launches automatically.

2 Click **Guided Setup**.

3 Click **Connect Your Printer**.

4 Select **Wireless Connection**, and then click **Next**.

The setting method selection window appears.

5 Select **Advanced**.

Select a connection method from the following

- Ethernet Cable
- WPS-PIN

- WPS-PBC
- Operator Panel
- Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

Ethernet Cable

1 Select **Ethernet Cable**, and then click **Next**.

2 Follow the instructions, and then click **Next**.

The **Advanced Configuration Tool** screen appears.

3 Select the printer to be configured in the **Select Printer** screen, and then click **Next**.

📝 **NOTE:** If the printer to be configured is not listed in the **Select Printer** screen, try the following steps:

- Click **Refresh** to update the information.
- Click **Enter IP Address**, and then enter the IP address of your printer.

4 Enter the SSID.

5 Select **Type of wireless network**.

6 Configure the security setting, and then click **Next**.

The **IP Address Settings** screen appears.

7 Select **IP Mode** depending on your network scheme.

When **IPv4** is selected:

Configure the following:

a Select **Type**.

b Enter the following items:
- **IP address** of your printer
- **Subnet Mask**
- **Gateway Address**

When **IPv6** is selected:

Configure the following:

a Select **Use Manual Address**.

b Enter IP address of your printer.

   c   Enter the gateway address of your network.

   When **Dual Stack** is selected:

      Configure the **IPv4 Settings** and **IPv6 Settings**.

8   Click **Next**.

9   Ensure that the wireless settings are displayed, and then click **Apply**.

   The **Complete configuration** screen appears.

10   Click **Next**.

11   Follow the instructions until the **Check Setup** screen appears, and then click **Next**.

12   Confirm there are no errors displayed on the operator panel, and then click **NO** on the **Check Setup** screen.

> ✎ **NOTE:** If you see any errors, click **YES** and follow the instruction.

13   Click **Start Installation**.

14   Select **Local Installation**, and then click **Next**.

15   Check if the printer to be installed is listed in the **Select Printer** screen, and then click **Next**.

> ✎ **NOTE:** If the printer to be installed is not listed in the **Select Printer** screen, try the following steps:
> - Click **Refresh** to update the information.

- Click **Add Printer**, and then enter the details of the printer manually.

16 Configure the required items on the **Enter Printer Settings** screen, and then click **Next**.

17 Select the software to be installed, and then click **Install**.

The **Congratulations!** screen appears.

18 Click **Finish** to exit this tool.

The wireless configuration is complete.

WPS-PIN

📝 **NOTE:** WPS-PIN (Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Personal Identification Number) is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration, by entering PIN assignments to a printer and computer. This setting, performed through access point, is available only when the access points of your wireless router supports WPS.

1 Select **WPS-PIN**, and then click **Next**.

2 Follow the instructions until the **Check Setup** screen appears.

3 Confirm there are no errors displayed on the operator panel, and then click **NO** on the **Check Setup** screen.

📝 **NOTE:** If you see any errors, click YES and follow the instruction.

4 Select **Local Installation**, and then click **Next**.

5 Check if the printer to be installed is listed in the **Select Printer**, and then click **Next**.

> 📝 **NOTE:** If the printer to be installed is not listed in the **Select Printer**, try the following steps:
> - Click **Refresh** to update the information.
> - Click **Add Printer**, and then enter the details of the printer manually.

6 Configure the required items on the **Enter Printer Settings** screen, and then click **Next**.

7 Select the software to be installed, and then click **Install**.

The **Congratulations!** screen appears.

8 Click **Finish** to exit this tool.

The wireless configuration is complete.

When the **WPS-PIN** operation is successful and the printer is rebooted, wireless LAN connection is completed.

WPS-PBC

> 📝 **NOTE:** WPS-PBC (Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Push Button Configuration) is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration, by pressing the button provided on the access point via wireless routers, and then performing WPS-PBC setting on the operator panel. This setting is available only when the access point supports WPS.

1 Select **WPS-PBC**, and then click **Next**.

2 Follow the instructions until the **Check Setup** screen appears.

3 Confirm there are no errors displayed on the operator panel, and then click **NO** on the **Check Setup** screen.

> 📝 **NOTE:** If you see any errors, click **YES** and follow the instruction.

4 Select **Local Installation**, and then click **Next**.

5 Check if the printer to be installed is listed in the **Select Printer** screen, and then click **Next**.

> ![note icon] **NOTE:** If the printer to be installed is not listed in the **Select Printer** screen, try the following steps:
> - Click **Refresh** to update the information.
> - Click **Add Printer**, and then enter the details of the printer manually.

6 Configure the required items on the **Enter Printer Settings** screen, and then click **Next**.

7 Select the software to be installed, and then click **Install**.

The **Congratulations!** screen appears.

8 Click **Finish** to exit this tool.

The wireless configuration is complete.

> ![note icon] **NOTE:** For **WPS-PBC** operation on the wireless LAN access point, refer to the manual supplied with the wireless LAN access point.

When the **WPS-PBC** operation is successful and the printer is rebooted, wireless LAN connection is completed.

Operator Panel

1 Select **Operator Panel**, and then click **Next**.

2 Follow the instructions until the **Check Setup** screen appears.

3 Confirm there are no errors displayed on the operator panel, and then click **NO** on the **Check Setup** screen.

> **NOTE:** If you see any errors, click **YES** and follow the instruction.

4 Select **Local Installation**, and then click **Next**.

5 Check if the printer to be installed is listed in the **Select Printer** screen, and then click **Next**.

> **NOTE:** If the printer to be installed is not listed in the **Select Printer** screen, try the following steps:
> - Click **Refresh** to update the information.
> - Click **Add Printer**, and then enter the details of the printer manually.

6 Configure the required items on the **Enter Printer Settings** screen, and then click **Next**.

7 Select the software to be installed, and then click **Install**.

The **Congratulations!** screen appears.

8 Click **Finish** to exit this tool.

The wireless configuration is complete.

Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

1 Select **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, and then click **Next**.

2 Follow the instructions until the **Check Setup** screen appears.

3 Confirm there are no errors displayed on the operator panel, and then click **NO** on the **Check Setup** screen.

⊘ **NOTE:** If you see any errors, click **YES** and follow the instruction.

4 Select **Local Installation**, and then click **Next**.

5 Check if the printer to be installed is listed in the **Select Printer** screen, and then click **Next**.

⊘ **NOTE:** If the printer to be installed is not listed in the **Select Printer** screen, try the following steps:
- Click **Refresh** to update the information.
- Click **Add Printer**, and then enter the details of the printer manually.

6 Configure the required items on the **Enter Printer Settings** screen, and then click **Next**.

7 Select the software to be installed, and then click **Install**.

The **Congratulations!** screen appears.

8 Click **Finish** to exit this tool.

The wireless configuration is complete.

When the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** operation is successful and the printer is rebooted, wireless LAN connection is completed.

Setting up a New Wireless Network Environment for Your Computer (When you need to setup your wireless connectivity with your computer)

For DHCP network:

1 Setting up your computer for wireless connectivity:

> 🖉 **NOTE:** You can also change the wireless settings using the wireless application that may be installed in your computer.

For Windows XP and Windows Server 2003:

a Select **Network Connections** from **Control Panel**.

b Right-click **Wireless Network Connection** and select **Properties**.

c Select the **Wireless Networks** tab.

d Ensure that the check box for **Use Windows to configure my wireless network settings** is checked.

> 🖉 **NOTE:** Make note of the wireless settings on the **Advanced** window (step f) and the **Wireless Network Properties** window (step g). You may require these settings later.

e Click the **Advanced** button.

f Select **Computer to Computer (ad hoc) networks only** and close the **Advanced** dialog box.

g Click the **Add** button to display **Wireless network properties**.

h On the **Association** tab, enter the following information and click **OK**.

Network name (SSID): **dell_device**

Network Authentication: **Open**

Data encryption: **Disabled**

Ad hoc network: **checked**

i Click the **Move up** button to move the newly added SSID to the top of the list.

j Click **OK** to close the **Property** dialog box.

For Windows Vista:

a Open **Control Panel**.

b Select **Network and Internet**.

c Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

d Select **Connect to a network**.

e Select **dell_device** from the network items listed in **Connect to a network**.

f Select **Connect Anyway in the warning** dialog box indicating you are entering an unsecured area.

g Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

For Windows Server 2008:

a Open **Control Panel**.

b Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

c Select **Connect to a network**.

d Select **dell_device** from the network items listed in **Connect to a network**.

e Select **Connect Anyway in the warning** dialog box indicating you are entering an unsecured area.

f Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

For Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7:

a Open **Control Panel**.

b Select **Network and Internet**.

c Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

d Select **Connect to a network**.

e Select **dell_device** from the network items listed in the available network list, and click **Connect**.

2 Check the IP address assigned by AutoIP on the printer.

a Press the ☰ (**Menu**) button on the printer operator panel.

b Press the ⋁ button until `System` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

c Press the ⋁ button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

d Press the ⋁ button until `Network` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

e Press the ⋁ button until `TCP/IP` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

f Press the ⋁ button until `IPv4` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

(Default IP address range: 169.254.*xxx*.*yyy*)

```
IP Address
169.254.000.041*
```

3 Ensure that the IP Address on your computer is assigned by DHCP.
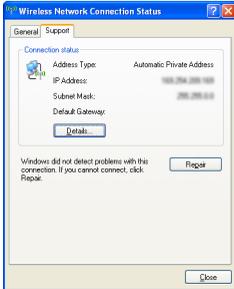
4 Enter the IP address in the address bar on your web browser.

Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool page appears.
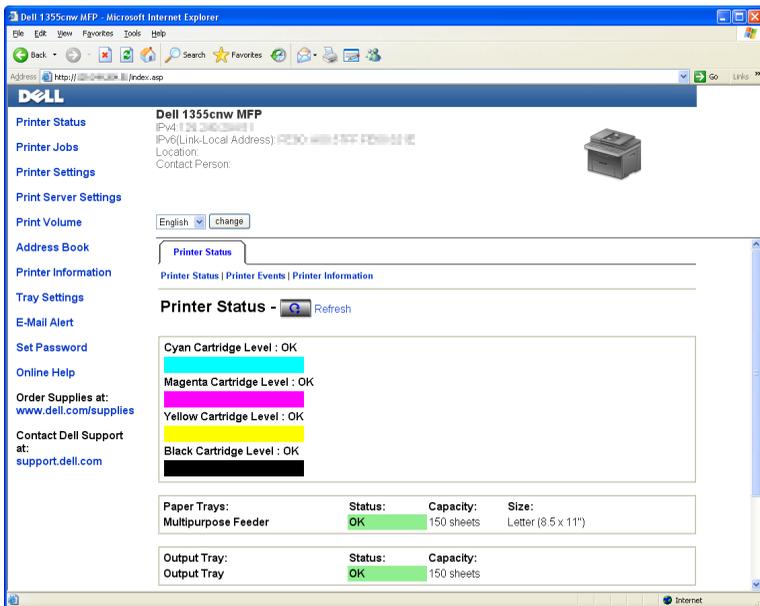
5 Create wireless setting of the printer on **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

6 Reboot the printer.

7 Restore the wireless settings on your computer.

NOTE: If the operating system on your computer provides a wireless configuration software, use it to change the wireless settings. See the instructions below.

For Windows XP and Windows Server 2003:

a Open **Control Panel**.

b Select **Network Connections**.

c Right-click **Wireless Network Connection** and select **Properties**.

d Select **Wireless Network** tab.

e Ensure that the check box for **Use Windows to configure my wireless network settings** is checked.

f Click **Advanced**.

g You can either set the printer to the ad-hoc mode or the infrastructure mode.

   For Adhoc mode:

   Select **Computer to Computer (ad hoc) networks only** and close the dialog box.

   For Infrastructure mode:

   Select **Access point (Infrastructure) networks only** and close the dialog box.

h Click **Add** to display **Wireless network properties**.

i Enter the setting that you will send to the printer and click **OK**.

j Click **Move up** to move the setting to the top of the list.

k Click **OK** to close the **Property dialog** box.

For Windows Vista:

a Open **Control Panel**.

b Select **Network and Internet**.

c Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

d Select **Connect to a network**.

e Select the network, and then click **Connect**.

f Select **Connect Anyway** in the warning dialog box indicating you are entering an unsecured area.

g Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

For Windows Server 2008:

a Open **Control Panel**.

b Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

c Select **Connect to a network**.

d Select the network, and then click **Connect**.

e Select **Connect Anyway** in the warning dialog box indicating you are entering an unsecured area.

f Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

For Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7:

a Open **Control Panel**.

b Select **Network and Internet**.

c Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

d Select **Connect to a network**.

e Select the network, and then click **Connect**.

f Enter the Security key and click **OK**, if necessary.

For Fixed IP networks:

1 Set up your computer for wireless connectivity:

NOTE: If the operating system on your computer provides a wireless configuration software, use it to change the wireless settings. See the instructions below.

For Windows XP and Windows Server 2003:

a Select **Network Connections** from Control Panel.

b Right-click **Wireless Network Connection** and select **Properties**.

c Select the **Wireless Networks** tab.

d Ensure that the check box for **Use Windows to configure my wireless network settings** is checked.

NOTE: Be sure to write down the current wireless computer settings in step d and step f so that you can restore them later.

e Click the **Advanced** button.

f Select **Computer to Computer (ad hoc) networks only** and close the **Advanced** dialog box.

g Click the **Add** button to display **Wireless network** properties.

h On the **Association** tab, enter the following information and click **OK**.

Network name (SSID): **dell_device**

Network Authentication: **Open**

Data encryption: **Disabled**

Ad hoc network: **checked**

i Click the **Move up** button to move the newly added SSID to the top of the list.

j Click **OK** to close the **Property** dialog box.

For Windows Vista:

a Open **Control Panel**.

b Select **Network and Internet**.

c Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

d Select **Connect to a network**.

e Select **dell_device** from the network items listed in **Connect to a network**.

f   Select **Connect Anyway** in the warning dialog box indicating you are entering an unsecured area.

g   Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

For Windows Server 2008:

a   Open **Control Panel**.

b   Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

c   Select **Connect to a network**.

d   Select **dell_device** from the network items listed in **Connect to a network**.

e   Select **Connect Anyway** in the warning dialog box indicating you are entering an unsecured area.

f   Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

For Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7:

a   Open **Control Panel**.

b   Select **Network and Internet**.

c   Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

d   Select **Connect to a network**.

e   Select **dell_device** from the network items listed in the available network list, and click **Connect**.

2   Check the IP address on your computer.

3 Set the IP address on the printer.

See "Assigning an IP Address (for IPv4 Mode)" on page 53.

4 Enter the IP address in the address bar on your web browser.

Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool page appears.
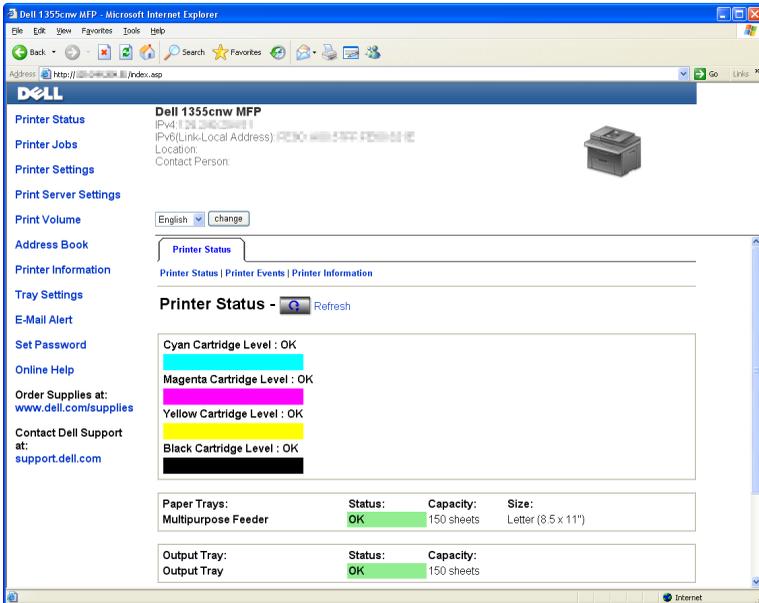
5 Change the wireless setting of the printer on **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

6 Reboot the printer.

7 Restore the wireless settings on your computer.

> ✍ **NOTE:** If the operating system on your computer provides a wireless configuration software, use it to change the wireless settings. Or you can change the wireless settings using the tool provided with the operating system. See the instructions below.

For Windows XP and Windows Server 2003:

a Select **Network Connections** from Control Panel.

b Right-click **Wireless Network Connection** and select **Properties**.

c Select **Wireless Network** tab.

d Ensure that the check box for **Use Windows to configure my wireless network settings** is checked.

e Click **Advanced**.

f You can either set the printer to the ad-hoc mode or the infrastructure mode.

For Adhoc mode:

Select **Computer to Computer (ad hoc) networks only** and close the dialog box.

For Infrastructure mode:

Select **Access point (Infrastructure) networks only** and close the dialog box.

g Click **Add** to display **Wireless network properties**.

h Enter the setting that you will send to the printer and click **OK**.

i Click **Move up** to move the setting to the top of the list.

j Click **OK** to close the **Property** dialog box.

For Windows Vista:

a Open **Control Panel**.

b Select **Network and Internet**.

c Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

d Select **Connect to a network**.

e Select the network, and then click **Connect**.

f Select **Connect Anyway** in the warning dialog box indicating you are entering an unsecured area.

g Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

For Windows Server 2008:

a Open **Control Panel**.

b Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

c Select **Connect to a network**.

d Select the network, and then click **Connect**.

e Select **Connect Anyway** in the warning dialog box indicating you are entering an unsecured area.

f Click **Close** in the dialog box after confirming the connection is a success.

For Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7:

a Open **Control Panel**.

b Select **Network and Internet**.

c Select **Network and Sharing Center**.

d Select **Connect to a network**.

e Select the network, and then click **Connect**.

f Enter the Security key and click **OK**, if necessary.

Setting Up for Shared Printing

You can share your new printer on the network using the *Drivers and Utilities* CD that shipped with your printer, or using Windows Point and Print or peer-to-peer method. However, if you use either of the Microsoft® methods you will not get features such as the status monitor and other printer utilities, which will get installed with the *Drivers and Utilities* CD.

If you want to use the printer on a network, share the printer and install its drivers on all the computers on the network.

📝 **NOTE:** You need to purchase a Ethernet cable separately for shared printing.

For Windows® XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server® 2003, Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition

1 Click **Start → Printers and Faxes**.

2 Right-click this printer icon and select **Properties**.

3 From the **Sharing** tab, check the **Share this printer** check box, and then type a name in the **Share name** text box.

4 Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients using this printer.

5 Click **OK**.

If the files are not present in your computer, then you will be prompted to insert the server operating system CD.

For Windows Vista®, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

1 Click **Start → Control Panel → Hardware and Sound → Printers**.

2 Right-click the printer icon and select **Sharing**.

3 Click **Change sharing options** button.

4 The "**Windows needs your permission to continue**" appears.

5 Click **Continue** button.

6 Select the **Share this printer** check box, and then type a name in the **Share name** text box.

7 Select **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients using this printer.

8 Click **OK**.

For Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

1 Click **Start → Control Panel → Printers**.

2 Right-click the printer icon and select **Sharing**.

3 Click **Change Sharing Options** button if exists.

4   Select the **Share this printer** check box, and then type a name in the **Share name** text box.

5   Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients using this printer.

6   Click **OK**.

For Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2

1   Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.

2   Right-click the printer icon and select **Printer properties**.

3   On the **Sharing** tab, click **Change Sharing Options** button if exists, and then click **Yes**.

4   Select the **Share this printer** check box, and then type a name in the **Share name** text box.

5   Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients using this printer.

6   Click **OK**.

7   Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

To check that the printer is shared:

- Ensure that the printer object in the **Printers, Printers and Faxes, or Devices and Printers** folder is shared. The share icon is shown under the printer icon.

- Browse **Network or My Network Places**. Find the host name of the server and look for the shared name you assigned to the printer.

Now that the printer is shared, you can install the printer on network clients using the Point and Print method or the peer-to-peer method.

Point and Print

Point and Print is a Microsoft Windows technology that allows you to connect to a remote printer. This feature automatically downloads and installs the printer driver.

For Windows XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition

1 On the Windows desktop of the client computer, double-click **My Network Places**.

2 Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.

3 Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.
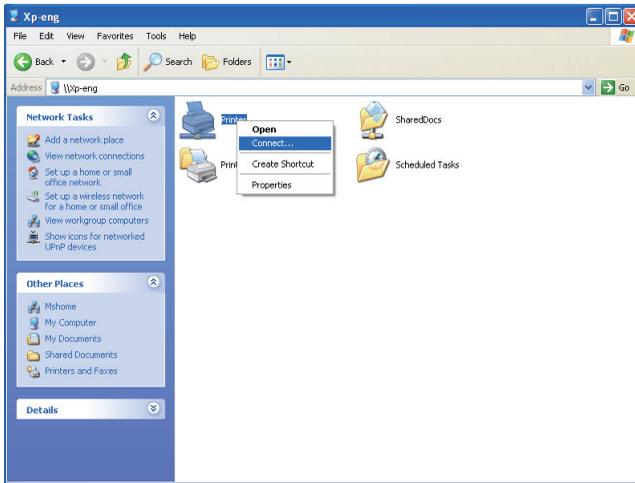
Wait for the driver information to be copied from the server computer to the client computer, and for a new printer object to be added to the **Printers and Faxes** folder. The time taken to copy varies based on the network traffic.

Close **My Network Places**.

4 Print a test page to verify installation.

   a Click **start** (**Start** for Windows Server 2003 / Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition) → **Settings** (for Windows XP / Windows XP 64-bit Edition) → **Printers and Faxes**.

   b Select the printer you have installed.

   c Click **File** → **Properties**.

   d On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.

When a test page is printed successfully, installation is complete.

For Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

1 Click **Start** → **Network**.

2 Locate and double-click the host name of the server computer.

3 Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.

4 Click **Install driver**.

5 Click **Continue** in **User Account Control** dialog box.

Wait until the driver is copied from the server to the client computer. A new printer object is added to the **Printers** folder. The duration of this procedure may vary based on the network traffic.

6 Print a test page to verify installation.

  a Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound**.

  b Select **Printers**.

  c Right-click the printer you just created and select **Properties**.

  d On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.

  When a test page is printed successfully, installation is complete.

For Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

1 Click **Start** → **Network**.

2 Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.

3 Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.

4 Click **Install driver**.

5 Wait until the driver is copied from the server to the client computer. A new printer object will be added to the **Printers** folder. The time taken for these activities varies based on network traffic.

6 Print a test page to verify installation.

  a Click **Start** → **Control Panel**.

  b Select **Printers**.

  c Right-click the printer you just created and select **Properties**.

d On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.

When a test page is printed successfully, installation is complete.

For Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2

1 Click **Start → Network** (**Start → Network** for Windows Server 2008 R2).

2 Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.

3 Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.

4 Click **Install driver**.

5 Wait until the driver is copied from the server to the client computer. A new printer object will be added to the **Printers** folder. The time taken for these activities varies based on network traffic.

6 Print a test page to verify installation.

a Click **Start → Devices and Printers**.

b Right-click the printer you just created and select **Printer properties**.

c On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.

When a test page is printed successfully, installation is complete.

Peer-to-Peer

If you use the peer-to-peer method, the printer driver is installed on each client computer. The client computers can modify the drivers and handle the print jobs.

For Windows XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition

1 Click **start** (**Start** for Windows Server 2003 / Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition) **→ Settings** (for Windows XP / Windows XP 64-bit Edition) **Printers and Faxes**.

2 Click **Add a Printer** to launch the **Add Printer** wizard.

3 Click **Next**.

4 Select **A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer**, and then click **Next**. If the printer is not listed, type in the path of the printer in the text box.
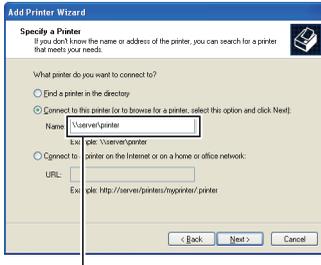
For example:\\<server host name>\<shared printer name>

The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it to the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

5 Click **Browse for a printer**, and then click **Next**.

If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a printer driver. If no system driver is available, specify the location where the driver is available.

6 Select **Yes** if you want this printer to be set as the default printer, and then click **Next**.

If you want to verify installation, click **Yes** to print a test page.

7 Click **Finish**.

When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

For Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.

2 Click **Add a Printer** to launch the **Add Printer wizard**.

3 Select **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**, and then click **Next**. If the printer is listed, select the printer and click **Next**, or select **The printer that I want isn't listed** and type in the path of the printer in the **Select a shared printer by name** text box and click **Next**.

For example:\\<server host name>\<shared printer name>

The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it on the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

4   If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a printer driver. If no system driver is available, specify the location where the driver is available.

5   Select **Yes** if you want this printer to be set as the default printer, and then click **Next**.

6   If you want to verify installation, click **Print a test page**.

7   Click **Finish**.

When a test page is printed successfully, installation is complete.

For Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

1   Click **Start → Control Panel → Printers**.

2   Click **Add a Printer** to launch the **Add Printer** wizard.

3   Select **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**, and then click **Next**. If the printer is listed, select the printer and click **Next**, or select **The printer that I want isn't listed** and type in the path of the printer in the **Select a shared printer by name** text box and click **Next**.

For example: \\<server host name>\<shared printer name>

The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it on the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

4 If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a printer driver. If no system driver is available, specify the location where the driver is available.

5 Select **Yes** if you want this printer to be set as the default printer, and then click **Next**.

6 If you want to verify installation, click **Print a test page**.

7 Click **Finish**.

When a test page is printed successfully, installation is complete.

For Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2

1 Click **Start → Devices and Printers**.

2 Click **Add a Printer** to launch the **Add Printer** wizard.

3 Select **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**. If the printer is listed, select the printer and click **Next**, or select **The printer that I want isn't listed**. Click **Select a shared printer by name** and type in the path of the printer in the text box, and then click **Next**.

For example: \\<server host name>\<shared printer name>

The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it to the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

4 If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a printer driver. If no system driver is available, you need to specify the path to the available drivers.

5 Confirm the printer name, and then click **Next**.

6 Select **Yes** if you want this printer to be set as the default printer, and then click **Next**.

7 If you want to verify installation, click **Print a test page**.

8 Click **Finish**.

When a test page is printed successfully, installation is complete.

10

Installing Printer Drivers on Computers Running Macintosh

Installing the Drivers and Software

1 Run the *Drivers and Utilities* CD on the Macintosh computer.
2 Double-click the **Dell 1355cnw Installer** icon, and then click **Continue**.
3 Click **Continue** on the **Introduction** screen.
4 Confirm the installation location, and then click **Continue**.
5 Click **Install** to perform the standard installation.
6 Type the administrator's name and password, and then click **OK**.
7 Click **Install** to proceed with the installation.
8 Click **Close** to complete installation.

Adding a Printer on Mac OS X 10.5 or Later Version(s)

When Using a USB connection
1 Turn on the printer.
2 Connect the USB cable between the printer and Macintosh computer.
3 Open the **System Preferences**, and click **Print & Fax**.
4 Click the Plus (+) sign, and click **Default**.
5 Select the printer connected via USB from the **Printer Name** list.
   Name and **Print Using** are automatically entered.
6 Click **Add**.

When Using Bonjour
1 Turn on the printer.
2 Ensure that your Macintosh computer is connected to the network.

If you use wired connection, connect the Ethernet cable between the printer and the network.

If you use wireless connection, ensure that wireless connection is configured properly on your Macintosh computer and printer.

3 Open the **System Preferences**, and click **Print & Fax**.

4 Click the Plus (+) sign, and click **Default**.

5 Select the printer connected via Bonjour from the **Printer Name** list.

Name and **Print Using** are automatically entered.

6 Click **Add**.

When Using IP Printing

1 Turn on the printer.

2 Ensure that your Macintosh computer is connected to the network.

If you use wired connection, connect the Ethernet cable between the printer and the network.

If you use wireless connection, ensure that wireless connection is configured properly on your Macintosh computer and printer.

3 Open the **System Preferences**, and click **Print & Fax**.

4 Click the Plus (+) sign, and click **IP**.

5 Select **Line Printer Daemon - LPD** for **Protocol**.

6 Type the IP address for the printer in the **Address** area.

7 Select the model of your printer for **Print Using**.

   📝 **NOTE:** When the printing is set up using IP printing, the queue name is displayed as blank. You do not need to specify it.

8 Click **Add**.

Adding a Printer on Mac OS X 10.4.11

When Using a USB Connection

1 Turn on the printer.

2 Connect the USB cable between the printer and Macintosh computer.

3 Start **Printer Setup Utility**.

> ![NOTE icon] **NOTE:** You can find **Printer Setup Utility** in the **Utilities folder** in **Applications**.

4 Click **Add**.

5 Click **Default Browser** in the **Printer Browser** dialog box.

6 Select the printer connected via USB from the Printer list.

Name and **Print Using** are automatically entered.

7 Click **Add**.

When Using Bonjour

1 Turn on the printer.

2 Ensure that your Macintosh computer is connected to the network.

If you use wired connection, connect the Ethernet cable between the printer and the network.

If you use wireless connection, ensure that wireless connection is configured properly on your Macintosh computer and printer.

3 Start the **Printer Setup Utility**.

> ![NOTE icon] **NOTE:** You can find **Printer Setup Utility** in the **Utilities folder** in **Applications**.

4 Click **Add**.

5 Click **Default Browser** in the **Printer Browser** dialog box.

6 Select the printer connected via Bonjour from the **Printer Name** list.

Name and **Print Using** are automatically entered.

7 Click **Add**.

When Using IP Printing

1 Turn on the printer.

2 Ensure that your Macintosh computer is connected to the network.

If you use wired connection, connect the Ethernet cable between the printer and the network.

If you use wireless connection, ensure that wireless connection is configured properly on your Macintosh computer and printer.

3 Start **Printer Setup Utility**.

> 🖉 **NOTE:** You can find **Printer Setup Utility** in the **Utilities folder** in **Applications**.

4 Click **Add**.

5 Click **IP Printer** in the **Printer Browser** dialog box.

6 Select **Line Printer Daemon - LPD** for **Protocol**.

7 Type the IP address for the printer in the **Address** area.

8 Select **the model of your printer** for **Print Using**.

> 🖉 **NOTE:** When the printing is set up using IP printing, the queue name is displayed as blank. You do not need to specify it.

9 Click **Add**.

Using Your Printer

11

Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

Overview

📝 **NOTE:** This web tool is available only when the printer is connected to a network.

One of the features of the **Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool** is the E-Mail Alert Setup, which sends an e-mail to you or the key operator when the printer needs supplies or intervention.

To fill up the printer inventory report, enter the asset tag of all the required printers using the **Printer Information** feature in the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. Enter the IP address of each printer on the network to display the asset tag number.

The **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** feature also allows you to change the printer settings and keep track of printing trends.

To launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, enter the IP address of your printer in your web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of your printer, print the system settings page, or display the **TCP/IP Settings** page, which lists the IP address.

The Operator Panel

1   Press the ▤ (**Menu**) button.

2   Press the ∨ button until `System` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

3   Press the ∨ button until `Report/List` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

4   Ensure that `System Settings` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

   The system settings page is printed.

5   Confirm the IP address next to **IP Address** under **Network** on the system settings page.

   If the IP address is `0.0.0.0`, wait for a few minutes to resolve the IP address automatically, and then print the system settings page again.

   If the IP address is not resolved automatically, see "Assigning an IP Address (for IPv4 Mode)" on page 53.

The Tool Box

📝 **NOTE:** When the printer is connected to the USB port, **TCP/IP** Settings cannot be displayed.

📝 **NOTE:**

1   Click **Start**→ **All Programs**→ **Dell Printers**→ **Dell 1355 Multifunction Color Printer**→ **Tool Box**.

   📝 **NOTE:** When multiple printer drivers are installed on your computer, the **Select Printer** window appears. In this case, click the name of this printer listed in **Printer Name**, and then click **OK**.

   The **Tool Box** opens.

2   Click the **Printer Settings Report** tab.

3 Select **TCP/IP Settings** from the list at the left side of the page.

The **TCP/IP Settings** page is displayed.

If the IP address shows `0.0.0.0` (the factory default) or `169.254.xx.xx`, an IP address has not been assigned. To assign an IP address for your printer, see "Assigning an IP Address (for IPv4 Mode)" on page 53.

Using the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

Use the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** for:

Printer Status

Use the **Printer Status** menu to get feedback on the printer status. When a toner cartridge is running low, click the order supplies link on the first screen to order an additional toner cartridge.

Printer Jobs

Use the **Printer Jobs** menu to contain information on the **Job List** page and **Completed Jobs** page.

These pages show the details of the status regarding each protocol or job.

Printer Settings

Use the **Printer Settings** menu to change printer settings and view the settings in the operator panel remotely.

Print Server Settings

Using the **Print Server Settings** menu to change the type of printer interface and necessary conditions for communications.

Print Volume

Use the **Print Volume** option to check the number of pages printed for each paper size.

Address Book

Use the **Address Book** menu to view or edit the e-mail address, phone number, server address, and fax number entries in the Address Book, or to register new entries.

Printer Information

Use the **Printer Information** menu to display the information of your printer.

Tray Settings

Use the **Tray Settings** menu to get information about the paper size and type of paper loaded in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF).

E-Mail Alert

Use the **E-Mail Alert** menu to receive an e-mail when the printer needs supplies or intervention. Enter your name or the key operator name in the e-mail list box to be notified. Set **E-mail Alert** also when using the Scan to E-mail feature.

Set Password

Use the Set Password menu to lock the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** with a password so that other users do not inadvertently change the printer settings you selected.

NOTE: You must log in as an administrator to use this feature.

Online Help

Click **Online Help** to visit the Dell Support web site.

Order Supplies at:

www.dell.com/supplies

Contact Dell Support at:

support.dell.com

Setting Up the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

Ensure that you activate JavaScript in your browser before using the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

It is recommended that you configure the environment settings of your web browser before using the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

NOTE: The Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool pages may be unreadable if the language differs from that of your web browser.

Setting Up From Web Browser

It is recommended that you configure both the environment settings of your web browser and the operator panel before using the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

For Internet Explorer® 6.0, Internet Explorer 7.0, Internet Explorer 8.0

Setting Up the Display Language

1 Select **Internet Options** from **Tools** on the menu bar.

2 Select **Languages** in the **General** tab.

3 Specify the display language in order of preference in the **Language** list.

For example:

- **Italian (Italy) [it-IT]**
- **Spanish (Traditional Sort) [es-ES tradnl]**
- **German (Germany) [de-DE]**
- **French (France) [fr-FR]**
- **English (United States) [en-us]**
- **Danish [da-DK]**
- **Dutch (Netherlands) [nl-NL]**
- **Norwegian (Bokmal) [no]**
- **Swedish [sv-SE]**

Setting the IP Address of the printer to Non-Proxy

1 Select **Internet Options** from the **Tools** menu.

2 Click **LAN Settings** under **Local Area Network (LAN) settings** in the **Connections** tab.

3 You can configure the LAN settings in one of the following ways:

- Clear the **Use a proxy server for your LAN** check box under **Proxy server**.
- Click **Advanced**, and then specify the IP address of your printer in the **Do not use proxy server for addresses beginning with** field under **Exceptions**.

After setting the language and proxy, enter
`<http://nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn/>` (the IP address of your printer) in the
URL entry field of the browser to activate the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

For Firefox 2.0 or Later

Setting Up the Display Language

1 Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu.

2 Click **Advanced**.

3 When you use Firefox 2.0, click **Choose** in the **General** tab. When you use Firefox 3.0, click **Choose** in the **Content** tab.

4 Specify the display language in order of preference in the **Languages in order of preference** list.

For example:

- **English [en]** or **English/United States [en-us]**
- **Italian [it]**
- **Spanish [es]**
- **German [de]**
- **French [fr]**
- **Dutch [nl]**
- **Norwegian [no]**
- **Swedish [sv]**
- **Danish [da]**

Setting the IP Address of the printer to Non-Proxy

1 Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu.

2 Click **Advanced** tab.

3 Click **Network** on the **Options** dialog box.

4 Click **Connection** → **Settings**.

5 When you use Firefox 2.0, do one of the following:

- Select the **Direct connection to the Internet** check box.
- Select the **Auto-detect proxy settings for this network** check box.

- Select the **Manual proxy configuration** check box, and then enter the IP address of your printer in the **No Proxy for** edit box.

- Select the **Automatic proxy configuration URL** check box.

When you use Firefox 3.0, do one of the following:

- Select the **No Proxy** check box, if you do not want to use a proxy.

- Select the **Auto-detect proxy settings for this network** check box.

- Select the **Manual proxy configuration** check box, and then enter a hostname and a port number if you have a list of one or more proxy servers. If you have an IP address that does not use a proxy, enter the IP address of your printer in the **No Proxy for** edit box.

- Select the **Automatic proxy configuration URL** check box.

After setting the language and proxy, enter `<http://nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn/>` (the IP address of your printer) in the URL entry field of the browser to activate the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

Setting Up From Operator Panel

You can launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** only when `EWS` is set to `Enable` (the factory default) on the operator panel. Check the operator panel setting if you cannot launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. For more information, see "Understanding the Printer Menus" on page 359.

Page Display Format

The layout of the page is divided into three sections.

Top Frame

The top frame is located on the top of all pages. When the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** is activated, the current status and specifications of the printer are displayed in the top frame on every page.

The following items are displayed in the top frame.
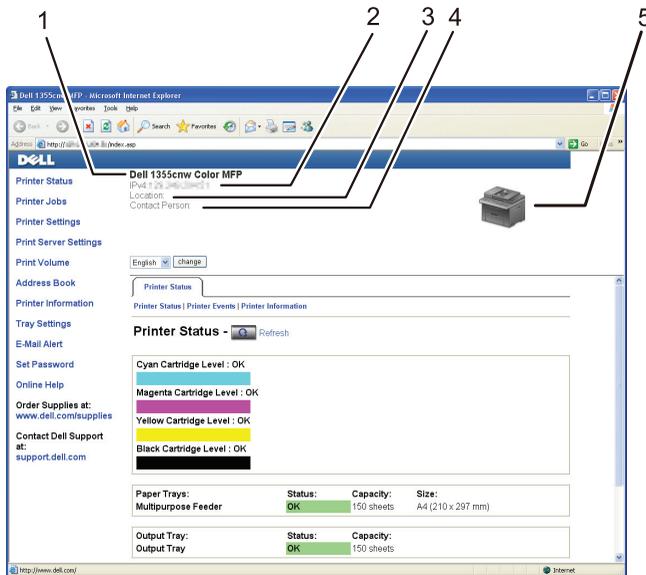
1	**Dell 1355cnw MFP**	Displays the printer model name.
2	**IP Address**	Displays the IP address of your printer.
3	**Location**	Displays the location of the printer. The location can be changed in the **Basic Information** on the **Print Server Settings** page.
4	**Contact Person**	Displays the administrator name of the printer. The name can be changed in the **Basic Information** on the **Print Server Settings** page.
5	**Printer Bitmap**	Shows the bitmap image of the printer. The **Printer Status** menu appears in the right frame when you click the image.

Left Frame

The left frame is located on the left side of all pages. The menu titles displayed in the left frame are linked to corresponding menus and pages. You can go to the corresponding page by clicking their characters.

The following menus are displayed in the left frame.
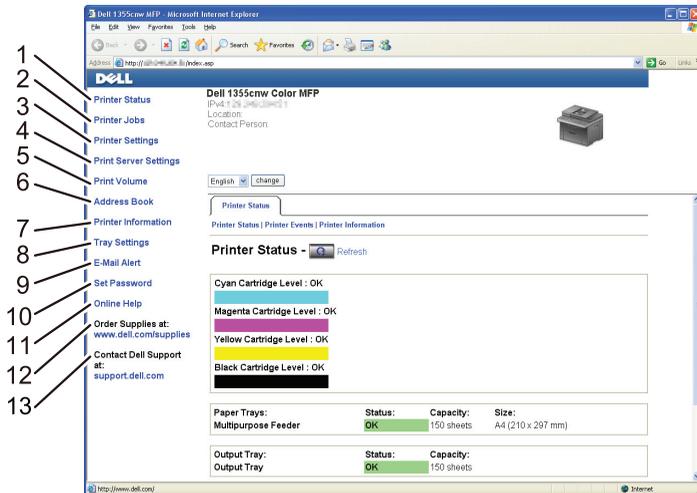
1	**Printer Status**	Links to the **Printer Status** menu.
2	**Printer Jobs**	Links to the **Printer Jobs** menu.
3	**Printer Settings**	Links to the **Printer Settings Report** menu.
4	**Print Server Settings**	Links to the **Print Server Reports** menu.
5	**Print Volume**	Links to the **Print Volume** menu
6	**Address Book**	Links to the **Address Book** menu.
7	**Printer Information**	Links to the **Printer Status** menu.
8	**Tray Settings**	Links to the **Tray Settings** menu.
9	**E-Mail Alert**	Links to the **Print Server Settings** menu.
10	**Set Password**	Links to the **Other Features** menu.
11	**Online Help**	Links to the Dell Support website.
12	**Order Supplies at:**	Links to the Dell web page.
13	**Contact Dell Support at:**	Links to the Dell support page web address: **support.dell.com**

Right Frame

The right frame is located on the right side of all pages. The contents of the right frame correspond to the menu that you select in the left frame. For details on the items displayed in the right frame, see "Details of the Menu Items" on page 133.

Buttons in the Right Frame
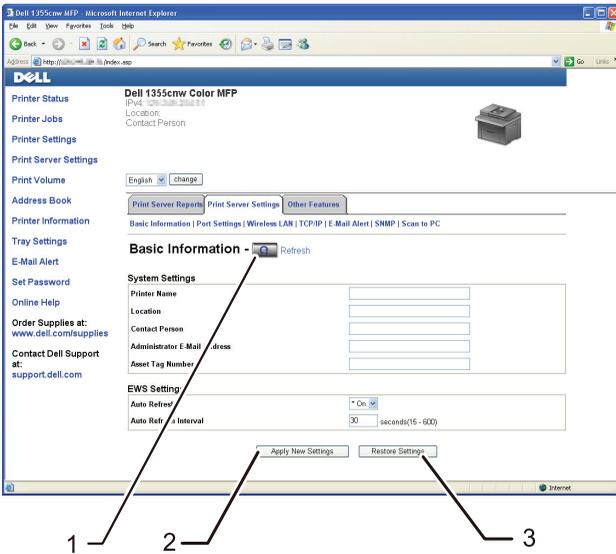
1	**Refresh** button	Receives the current printer configuration and updates the latest information in the right frame.
2	**Apply New Settings** button	Submits new settings made on the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** to the printer. The new settings replace the old settings of the printer.
3	**Restore Settings** button	Restores the old settings. New settings will not be submitted to the printer.

Changing the Settings of the Menu Items

Some menus allow you to change the printer settings through the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. When you access these menus, the authentication window appears on the screen. Enter a user name and password of the administrator by following the prompts displayed in the dialog box.

The default user name is **admin**, and the default password is left blank (NULL). You can change only the password in the **Set Password** page in the **Other Features** menu. For more information, see "Set Password" on page 178.

Details of the Menu Items

"Printer Status"	"Printer Status"
	"Printer Events"
	"Printer Information"
"Printer Jobs"	"Job List"
	"Completed Jobs"

"Printer Settings"	"Printer Settings Report"	"Menu Settings"
		"Reports"
	"Printer Settings"	"System Settings"
		"Secure Settings"
		"Copy Defaults"
		"Copy Color Balance"
		"Copy Settings"
		"Scan Defaults"
		"Fax Defaults"
		"Fax Settings"
	"Printer Maintenance"	"Paper Density"
		"Adjust BTR"
		"Adjust Fuser"
		"Auto Registration Adjustment"
		"Color Registration Adjustment"
		"Clean Developer"
		"Adjust Altitude"
		"Reset Defaults"
		"Non-Dell Toner"
		"Clock Settings"
		"Web Link Customization"

"Print Server Settings"	"Print Server Reports"	"Print Server Setup Page"
		"E-Mail Alert Setup Page"
	"Print Server Settings"	"Basic Information"
		"Port Settings"
		"Wireless LAN (Dell 1355cnw Multifunction Color Printer only)"[*1]
		"TCP/IP"
		"E-Mail Alert"
		"SNMP"
		"Scan to PC"
	"Other Features"	"Set Password"
		"Reset Print Server"
"Print Volume"		"Print Volume"
"Address Book"	"Fax/E-mail"	"Address Book - Top Page"
		"Address Book (Confirm/Change, Create)"
		"Address Book (Delete)"
		"FAX Group - Top Page"
		"FAX Group (Confirm/Change, Create)"
		"FAX Group (Delete)"
		"E-Mail Group - Top Page"
		"E-Mail Group (Confirm/Change, Create)"
		"E-Mail Group (Delete)"
		"E-Mail Default Setup"
	"Server Address"	"Server Address - Top Page"
		"Server Address (Confirm/Change, Create)"
		"Server Address (Delete)"
"Tray Settings"		

[*1] This item is available only when the printer is connected with a wireless network.

Printer Status

Use the **Printer Status** menu to check the status of consumables, hardware, and specifications of the printer.

The following pages are displayed in the **Printer Status** menu.

Printer Status

Purpose:

To check the status of the consumables and trays.

Values:

Cyan Cartridge Level Magenta Cartridge Level Yellow Cartridge Level Black Cartridge Level			Displays the percentage of toner remaining in each toner cartridge. When a cartridge is empty, a message appears. The text *Call or Order* is linked to the Dell Printer Supplies website.
Paper Trays	Status	OK	Indicates that there is some paper in the tray but the quantity is unknown.
		Add Paper	Indicates that there is no paper in the tray.
	Capacity		Displays the maximum capacity of the paper tray.
	Size		Displays the size of paper in the tray.
Output Tray	Status	OK	Indicates that the tray is available.
	Capacity		Displays the maximum capacity of the output tray.
Cover	Status	Closed	Indicates that the cover is closed.
		Open	Indicates that the cover is open.
Printer Type			Displays the type of the printer. **Color Laser** is displayed normally.
Printing Speed			Displays the printing speed.

Printer Events

Purpose:

When faults such as *Out of Paper* or *Rear Cover is Open* occur, the details of all alerts or indications of faults are displayed in the **Printer Events** page.

Values:

Location	Displays the location where the error occurred.
Details	Displays the details of the error.

Printer Information

Purpose:

To display the system information of the printer. This page can also be displayed by clicking **Printer Information** in the left frame.

Values:

Dell Service Tag Number		Displays Dell's service tag number.
Asset Tag Number		Displays the asset tag number of the printer.
Printer Serial Number		Displays the serial number of the printer.
Memory Capacity		Displays the memory capacity.
Processor Speed		Displays the processing speed.
Printer Revision Levels	Firmware Version	Displays the version of the controller.
	Network Firmware Version	Displays the NIC version.

Printer Jobs

The **Printer Jobs** menu contains information on the **Job List** and **Completed Jobs** pages. These pages show the details of the status regarding each protocol or the print jobs.

Job List

Purpose:

To confirm the print jobs that are being processed. Click the **Refresh** button to update the screen.

Values:

ID	Displays the job ID.

Job Name	Displays the file name of the job being printed.
Owner	Displays the name of the job owner.
Host Name	Displays the name of the host computer.
Job Status	Displays the status of the job being printed.
Job Type	Displays the type of the job.
Host I/F	Displays the status of the host interface.
Job Submitted Time	Displays the date when the print job was submitted.

Completed Jobs

Purpose:

To check the completed jobs. Up to 20 latest jobs are displayed. Click the **Refresh** button to update the screen.

Values:

ID	Displays the job ID.
Job Name	Displays the file name of the job.
Owner	Displays the name of the job owner.
Host Name	Displays the name of the host computer.
Output Result	Displays the status of the job.
Job Type	Displays the type of the job.
Impression Number	Displays the total number of pages used by the print job.
No. of Sheets	Displays the total number of sheets used by the print job.
Host I/F	Displays the status of the host interface.
Job Submitted Time	Displays the date when the job was submitted.

Printer Settings

Use the **Printer Settings** menu to display the **Printer Settings Report** and to configure the printer settings.

The following tabbed pages are displayed at the top of the right frame.

Printer Settings Report

The **Printer Settings Report** tab contains the **Menu Settings** and **Reports** pages.

Menu Settings

Purpose:

To display the current settings of your printer.

Values:

System Settings	Power Saver Timer - Sleep	Displays the time taken by the printer before it enters the power saver timer - sleep after it finishes a job.
	Power Saver Timer - Deep Sleep	Displays the time taken by the printer before it enters the power saver timer - deep sleep after it goes into the power saver timer mode 1.
	Auto Reset	Displays the time taken by the printer before it automatically resets the settings for Copy, Scan, or Fax on the operator panel to the defaults when no additional settings are made.
	Control Panel Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the operator panel input is correct. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Panel Alert Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the operator panel input is incorrect. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Job Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when a job is complete. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Alert Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when a problem occurs. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Out of Paper Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the printer runs out of paper. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Auto Clear Alert Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted 5 seconds before the printer performs auto clear. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.

	All Tones	Displays the volume of all the alert tones. **Off** indicates that all the tones are disabled.
	Job Time-Out	Displays the amount of time that the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer.
	Panel Language	Displays the language used on the operator panel.
	Auto Log Print[*1]	Displays whether to automatically print a job history report after every 20 jobs.
	mm/inch	Displays the measurement unit used after the numeric value on the operator panel.
Secure Settings	**Panel Lock Set**	Displays whether to limit access to Admin Menu with a password.
	Copy Service Lock Set	Displays whether to enable the Copy service or to require a password to use the service.
	Scan Service Lock Set	Displays whether to enable the Scan service or to require a password to use the service.
	Fax Service Lock Set	Displays whether to enable the Fax service or to require a password to use the service.
	Print from USB	Displays whether to enable the USB-Print service or to require a password to use the service.
	Secure Receive Set	Displays whether to require a password to print incoming faxes.
Copy Defaults	**Color**	Displays whether to make copies in color or in black and white.
	Reduce/Enlarge	Displays the default copy reduction/enlargement ratio.
	Original Type	Displays the default document type.
	Document Size	Displays the default document size.
	Lighter/Darker	Displays the default copy density level.
	Sharpness	Displays the default sharpness level.
	Auto Exposure	Displays whether to suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.

Copy Color Balance	Color Balance (Red)	Displays the color balance level of red.
	Color Balance (Green)	Displays the color balance level of green.
	Color Balance (Blue)	Displays the color balance level of blue.
	Gray Balance	Displays the gray balance level.
Copy Settings	Multiple-Up	Displays whether to enable the Multiple-Up feature.
	Collated	Displays whether to sort the copy job.
	Margin Top/Bottom	Displays the value of the top and bottom margins.
	Margin Left/Right	Displays the value of the left and right margins.
	Margin Middle	Displays the value of the middle margin.

Scan Defaults	**Scan To Network**	Displays whether to store scanned image on a network server or on a computer.
	File Format	Displays the file format to save the scanned image.
	Color	Displays whether to scan in color or in black and white.
	Resolution	Displays the default scan resolution.
	Document Size	Displays the default document size.
	Lighter/Darker	Displays the default scan density level.
	Sharpness	Displays the default sharpness level.
	Auto Exposure	Displays whether to suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the scanned image.
	Margin Top/Bottom	Displays the value of the top and bottom margins.
	Margin Left/Right	Displays the value of the left and right margins.
	Margin Middle	Displays the value of the middle margin.
	Image Compression	Displays the image compression level.
	Max E-Mail Size	Displays the maximum size of e-mail that can be sent.
Fax Defaults	**Resolution**	Displays the resolution level to be used for fax transmission.
	Lighter/Darker	Displays the default density level to be used for fax transmission.
	Delayed Start	Displays the fax transmission start time.
Fax Settings	**Receive Mode**	Displays the fax receiving mode.
	Auto Receive Fax	Displays the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call.
	Auto Receive Tel/Fax	Displays the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call.
	Auto Receive Answer/Fax	Displays the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call.

Line Monitor	Displays the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.
Ring Tone Volume	Displays the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when **Receive Mode** is set to **Telephone/Fax**.
Line Type	Displays the line type.
Tone/Pulse	Displays the dialing type.
Resend Delay	Displays the interval between transmission attempts.
Redial Attempts	Displays the number of redial attempts.
Redial Delay	Displays the interval between redial attempts.
Junk Fax Setup	Displays whether to reject faxes sent from unwanted numbers.
Remote Receive	Displays whether to receive faxes by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.
Remote Receive Tone	Displays the remote receive code to start Remote Receive.
Fax Header	Displays whether to print the information of sender on the header of faxes.
Fax Header Name	Displays the name of sender to be printed on the header of faxes.
Fax Number	Displays the fax number to be printed on the header of faxes.
Fax Cover Page	Displays whether to attach a cover page to faxes.
DRPD Pattern	Displays the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) setting.
Sent Fax Forward	Displays whether to forward incoming faxes to a specified destination.
Fax Forward Number	Displays the fax number of the destination to which incoming faxes are to be forwarded.
Prefix Dial	Displays whether to set a prefix dial number.

	Prefix Dial Number	Displays a prefix dial number. This number dials before any auto dial number is started.
	Discard Size	Displays whether to discard text or images at the bottom of a fax page when the entire page does not fit onto the output paper.
	ECM	Displays whether to enable the Error Correction Mode (ECM).
	Modem Speed	Displays the fax modem speed.
	Fax Activity	Displays whether to automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.
	Fax Transmit	Displays whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission or only when an error occurs.
	Fax Broadcast	Displays whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission to multiple destinations or only when an error occurs.
	Fax Protocol	Displays whether to print a protocol monitor report after every fax transmission or only when an error occurs.
	Country	Displays the country where the printer is used.
Paper Density	**Plain**	Displays the paper density of plain paper.
	Label	Displays the paper density of labels.

Adjust BTR	Plain	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller for plain paper.
	Plain Thick	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller for thick plain paper.
	Covers	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller for cover paper.
	Label	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller for labels.
	Coated	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller for coated paper.
	Recycled	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller for recycled paper.
	Envelope	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller for envelopes.
Adjust Fuser	Plain	Displays the temperature setting of the fuser for plain paper.
	Plain Thick	Displays the temperature setting of the fuser for thick plain paper.
	Covers	Displays the temperature setting of the fuser for cover paper.
	Label	Displays the temperature setting of the fuser for labels.
	Coated	Displays the temperature setting of the fuser for coated paper.
	Recycled	Displays the temperature setting of the fuser for recycled paper.
	Envelope	Displays the temperature setting of the fuser for envelopes.
Auto Registration Adjustment		Displays whether to automatically adjust color registration.
Adjust Altitude		Displays the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.
Non-Dell Toner		Displays whether to use toner cartridge of another manufacturer.

Clock Settings	Date Format	Displays the default date format.
	Time Format	Displays the default time format; **24H** or **12 Hour Clock**.
	Time Zone	Displays the default time zone.
	Set Date	Displays the date setting.
	Set Time	Displays the time setting.
Web Link Customization	Select Reorder URL	Displays a link used for ordering consumables, which can be accessed from **Order Supplies at:** in the left frame.
	Regular	Displays the regular web address (**http://accessories.us.dell.com/sna**) that can be linked to **Order Supplies at:** in the left frame.
	Premier	Displays the premier web address (**http://premier.dell.com**) that can be linked to **Order Supplies at:** in the left frame.
Tray Settings	Tray 1 Paper Type	Displays the paper type setting of the MPF.
	Tray 1 Paper Size	Displays the paper size setting of the MPF.
	Tray 1 Custom Size - Y	Displays the length of custom size paper loaded in the MPF.
	Tray 1 Custom Size - X	Displays the width of custom size paper loaded in the MPF.
	Display Popup	Displays whether to use a popup menu that prompts the user to set **Paper Type** and **Paper Size** when the paper is loaded in the MPF.

*1 If more than 20 jobs are in the queue, the job history may be cleared.

Reports

Purpose:

To print the settings and history information of your printer.

Values:

System Settings	Click the **Start** button to print the system settings page.

Panel Settings	Click the **Start** button to print the panel settings page.
Job History	Click the **Start** button to print the Job History report.
Error History	Click the **Start** button to print the Error History report.
Address Book	Click the **Start** button to print the Address Book report.
Demo Page	Click the **Start** button to print the Demo Page.

Printer Settings

The **Printer Settings** tab contains the **System Settings**, **Secure Settings**, **Copy Defaults**, **Copy Color Balance**, **Copy Settings**, **Scan Defaults**, **Fax Defaults**, and **Fax Settings** pages.

System Settings

Purpose:

To configure the basic printer settings.

Values:

Power Saver Timer - Sleep[*1]	Specifies the time taken by the printer before it enters the power saver timer mode 1 after it finishes a job.
Power Saver Timer - Deep Sleep	Specifies the time taken by the printer before it enters the power saver timer mode 2 after it goes into the power saver timer mode 1.
Auto Reset	Specifies the time taken by the printer before it automatically resets the settings for Copy, Scan, or Fax on the operator panel to the defaults when no additional settings are made.
Control Panel Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when the operator panel input is correct, or disables the tone.
Panel Alert Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when the operator panel input is incorrect, or disables the tone.
Job Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when a job is complete, or disables the tone.
Alert Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when a problem occurs, or disables the tone.
Out of Paper Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when the printer runs out of paper, or disables the tone.

Auto Clear Alert Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted 5 seconds before the printer performs auto clear, or disables the tone.
All Tones	Sets the volume of all the alert tones, or disables all the tones.
Job Time-Out	Specifies the amount of time that the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer. The print job is cancelled if it times out.
Panel Language	Used to set the language on the operator panel.
Auto Log Print[*2]	Specifies if a job history needs to be printed after every 20 jobs.
mm/inch[*3]	Specifies the measurement unit displayed after the numeric value on the operator panel.

[*1] Enter 5 in **Power Saver Timer - Sleep** to put the printer in the power saver timer mode five minutes after it finishes a job. This uses less energy, but requires more warm-up time for the printer. Enter 5 if your printer shares an electrical circuit with room lighting and you notice lights flickering.
Select a high value if your printer is in constant use. In most circumstances, this keeps the printer ready to operate with minimum warm-up time. Select a value between 5 and 30 minutes for the power saver timer mode if you want a balance between energy consumption and a shorter warm-up period.
The printer automatically returns to the standby mode from the power saver timer mode when it receives data from the computer. You can also return the printer to the standby mode by pressing any button on the operator panel.
[*2] If more than 20 jobs are in the queue, the job history may be cleared.
[*3] The default for **mm/inch** varies depending on country-specific factory default.

Secure Settings

Panel Lock

Purpose:

To restrict access to `Admin Menu` with a password, and to set or change the password.

📝 **NOTE:** This menu sets a password to lock the operator panel. When you change the password for the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, click **Set Password** on the left frame and set the password.

Values:

Panel Lock Set	Restricts access to `Admin Menu` with a password.
New Password	Sets a password that is required to access `Admin Menu`.
Re-enter Password	Enter the new password again to confirm.

Function Enabled

Purpose:

To enable the services to be password-enabled, and allow the user to change it.

📝 **NOTE:** This menu sets a password to limit the Copy, Scan, Fax, and USB-Print services. When you change the password for the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, click **Set Password** you change on the left frame and set the password.

Values:

Copy Service Lock Set	Enables you to set a password for the Copy Service feature.
Scan Service Lock Set	Enables you to set a password for the Scan Service feature.
Fax Service Lock Set	Enables you to set a password for the Fax Service feature.
Print from USB	Enables you to set a password for the USB-Print Service feature.
New Password	Sets a password required to use the Copy, Scan, Fax, and USB-Print services.
Re-enter Password	Enter the new password again to confirm.

Secure Receive

Purpose:

Enables you to set a password to secure the incoming faxes. When the Secure Receive feature is enabled, the printer stores incoming faxes and prints them when the correct password is entered on the operator panel.

📝 **NOTE:** This menu sets a password to lock printing incoming fax. When changing the password for the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, click **Set Password** on the left frame and set the password.

Values:

Secure Receive Set	Enables you to set a password to secure the incoming faxes.
New Password	Sets a password that is required to print incoming faxes.

Re-enter Password	Enter the new password again to confirm.

Copy Defaults

Purpose:

To create your own default Copy settings.

Values:

Color	Selects mode for color or black and white copying.
Reduce/Enlarge	Sets the default copy reduction/enlargement ratio.
Custom Reduce/Enlarge	Sets a custom reduction/enlargement ratio within the range of 25% to 400% when **Reduce/Enlarge** is set to **Custom**.
Original Type	Sets the copy image quality.
Document Size	Sets the default document size.
Lighter/Darker	Sets the default copy density level.
Sharpness	Sets the default sharpness level.
Auto Exposure	Sets whether to suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.

Copy Color Balance

Purpose:

To specify the default color balance level.

Values:

Color Balance (Red)	Sets the color balance level of red.
Color Balance (Green)	Sets the color balance level of green.
Color Balance (Blue)	Sets the color balance level of blue.
Gray Balance	Sets the gray balance level.

Copy Settings

Purpose:

To configure the Copy settings.

NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Values:

Multiple-Up	Off*	Does not perform multiple-up printing.
	Auto	Automatically reduces the original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.
	ID Copy	Prints the original pages onto one sheet of paper in the original size.
	Manual	Prints the original pages onto one sheet of paper in the size specified in **Reduce/Enlarge**.
Collated	Sets whether to sort the copy job.	
Margin Top/Bottom	Sets the value of the top and bottom margins within the range of 0 mm to 50 mm/0.0 to 2.0 inch.	
Margin Left/Right	Sets the value of the left and right margins within the range of 0 mm to 50 mm/0.0 to 2.0 inch.	
Margin Middle	Sets the value of the middle margin within the range of 0 mm to 50 mm/0.0 to 2.0 inch.	

Scan Defaults

Purpose:

To create your own default Scan settings.

NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Values:

Scan To Network	Computer (Network)*	Stores the scanned image on a computer using the Server Message Block (SMB) protocol.
	Server (FTP)	Stores the scanned image on a server using the FTP protocol.
File Format	Sets the file format to save the scanned image.	
Color	Sets whether to scan in color or in black and white.	
Resolution	Sets the default scan resolution.	
Document Size	Sets the default document size.	
Lighter/Darker	Sets the default scan density level.	

Sharpness	Sets the default sharpness level.
Auto Exposure	Sets whether to suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the scanned image.
Margin Top/Bottom	Sets the value of the top and bottom margins within the range of 0 mm to 50 mm/0.0 to 2.0 inch.
Margin Left/Right	Sets the value of the left and right margins within the range of 0 mm to 50 mm/0.0 to 2.0 inch.
Margin Middle	Sets the value of the middle margin within the range of 0 mm to 50 mm/0.0 to 2.0 inch.
Image Compression	Sets the image compression level.
Max E-Mail Size	Sets the maximum size of e-mail that can be sent, within the range of 50 K bytes to 16384 K bytes. The default is 2048 K bytes.

Fax Defaults

Purpose:

To create your own default Fax settings.

NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Values:

Resolution	Standard*	Suitable for documents with normal sized characters.
	Fine	Suitable for documents containing small characters or thin lines or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.
	Super Fine	Suitable for documents containing extremely fine detail. The super fine mode is enabled only if the remote machine also supports the super fine resolution.
	Ultra Fine	Suitable for documents containing photographic images.
Lighter/Darker	Sets the default density level to be used for fax transmission.	
Delayed Start	Sets the fax transmission start time when sending a fax at a specified time.	

Fax Settings

Purpose:

To configure the basic fax settings.

📝 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Values:

Receive Mode	Telephone	Automatic fax reception is turned off. You can receive a fax by picking up the handset of the external telephone, pressing the remote receive code, and then pressing ▷.
	Fax*	Automatically receives faxes.
	Telephone/ Fax	When the printer receives an incoming fax, the external telephone rings for the time specified in **Auto Receive Fax/Tel**, and then the printer automatically receives a fax. If an incoming call is not a fax, the printer beeps from the internal speaker indicating that the call is a telephone call.
	Answer Machine/ Fax	The printer can share a telephone line with an answering machine. In this mode, the printer will monitor the fax signal and pick up the line if there are fax tones. If the phone communication is using serial transmission in your country (such as Germany, Sweden, Denmark, Austria, Belgium, Italy, France and Switzerland), this mode is not supported.
	DRPD	Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) option, a distinctive ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. After the telephone company has provided a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern, configure the fax setup to monitor for that specific ring pattern.
Auto Receive Fax		Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call.
Auto Receive Tel/Fax		Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call.

Auto Receive Answer/Fax	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call.
Line Monitor	Sets the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.
Ring Tone Volume	Sets the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when **Receive Mode** is set to **Telephone/Fax**.
Line Type	Sets the line type.
Tone/Pulse	Sets the dialing type.
Resend Delay	Specifies the interval between transmission attempts.
Redial Attempts	Specifies the number of redial attempts to make when the destination fax number is busy. If you enter 0, the printer will not redial.
Redial Delay	Specifies the interval between redial attempts.
Junk Fax Setup	Sets whether to reject faxes sent from unwanted numbers by accepting faxes only from the fax numbers registered in the Phone Book.
Remote Receive	Sets whether to receive a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.
Remote Receive Tone	Specifies the remote receive code in two digits to start **Remote Receive**.
Fax Header	Sets whether to print the information of sender on the header of faxes.
Fax Header Name	Sets the name of sender to be printed on the header of faxes. Up to 30 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
Fax Number	Sets the fax number of the printer to be printed on the header of faxes.
Fax Cover Page	Sets whether to attach a cover page to faxes.
DRPD Pattern	Sets the DRPD setting from **Pattern 1** to **Pattern 7**. DRPD is a service provided by some telephone companies.
Sent Fax Forward	Sets whether to forward incoming faxes to a specified destination.
Fax Forward Number	Specifies the fax number of the destination to which incoming faxes will be forwarded.

Prefix Dial	Specifies whether to set a prefix dial number.
Prefix Dial Number	Sets a prefix dial number of up to five digits. This number dials before any auto dial number is started. It is useful for accessing the Private Automatic Branch Exchange (PABX).
Discard Size	Sets whether to discard text or images at the bottom of a fax page when the entire page does not fit onto the output paper. Selecting **Auto Reduction** automatically reduces the fax page to fit it onto the output paper, and does not discard any images or text at the bottom of the page.
ECM	Sets whether to enable the ECM. To use the ECM, the remote machines must also support the ECM.
Modem Speed	Specifies the fax modem speed when a fax transmission or reception error occurs.
Fax Activity	Sets whether to automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.
Fax Transmit	Sets whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission or only when an error occurs.
Fax Broadcast	Sets whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission to multiple destinations or only when an error occurs.
Fax Protocol	Sets whether to print a protocol monitor report after every fax transmission or only when an error occurs.
Country	Sets the country where the printer is used.

Printer Maintenance

The **Printer Maintenance** tab contains the **Paper Density, Adjust BTR, Adjust Fuser, Auto Registration Adjustment, Color Registration Adjustment, Clean Developer, Adjust Altitude, Reset Defaults, Non-Dell Toner, Clock Settings**, and **Web Link Customization** pages.

Paper Density

Purpose:

To specify the paper density.

Values:

Plain	Sets the paper density of plain paper.
Label	Sets the paper density of labels.

Adjust BTR

Purpose:

To specify the optimum voltage settings for printing for the transfer roller (BTR). To lower the voltage, set negative values. To increase, set positive values.

The default settings may not give the best output on all paper types. If you see mottles on the print output, try to increase the voltage. If you see white spots on the print output, try to decrease the voltage.

NOTE: The print quality changes depending on the values you select for this item.

Values:

Plain	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for plain paper within the range of -3 to 3.
Plain Thick	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for thick plain paper within the range of -3 to 3.
Covers	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for cover paper within the range of -3 to 3.
Label	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for labels within the range of -3 to 3.
Coated	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for coated paper within the range of -3 to 3.
Recycled	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for recycled paper within the range of -3 to 3.
Envelope	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for envelopes within the range of -3 to 3.

Adjust Fuser

Purpose:

To specify the optimum temperature settings for printing for the fuser. To lower the temperature, set negative values. To increase, set positive values.

The default settings may not give the best output on all paper types. When the printed paper has curled, try to lower the temperature. When the toner does not fuse on the paper properly, try to increase the temperature.

NOTE: The print quality changes depending on the values you select for this item.

Values:

Plain	Sets the temperature settings for the fuser for plain paper within the range of -3 to 3.
Plain Thick	Sets the temperature settings for the fuser for thick plain paper within the range of -3 to 3.
Covers	Sets the temperature settings for the fuser for cover paper within the range of -3 to 3.
Label	Sets the temperature settings for the fuser for labels within the range of -3 to 3.
Coated	Sets the temperature settings for the fuser for coated paper within the range of -3 to 3.
Recycled	Sets the temperature settings for the fuser for recycled paper within the range of -3 to 3.
Envelope	Sets the temperature settings for the fuser for envelopes within the range of -3 to 3.

Auto Registration Adjustment

Purpose:

To specify whether to automatically adjust color registration.

Color Registration Adjustment

Purpose:

To automatically adjust color registration.

Color registration adjustment need to be made during the initial setup of the printer or when the printer is moved to a different location.

NOTE: The **Color Registration Adjustment** feature can be configured when **Auto Registration Adjustment** is set to **Off**.

Clean Developer

Purpose:

To rotate the developer motor and stir the toner in the toner cartridge, to use up a toner cartridge when you need to replace it before the end of its life, or to stir the toner in a new toner cartridge.

Values:

Clean Developer	Click **Start** to stir the toner in the toner cartridge.
Yellow Toner Refresh	Click **Start** to clean the toner in the yellow toner cartridge.
Magenta Toner Refresh	Click **Start** to clean the toner in the magenta toner cartridge.
Cyan Toner Refresh	Click **Start** to clean the toner in the cyan toner cartridge.
Black Toner Refresh	Click **Start** to clean the toner in the black toner cartridge.

Adjust Altitude

Purpose:

To specify the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.

The discharge phenomenon for charging the photo conductor varies with barometric pressure. Adjustments are performed by specifying the altitude of the location where the printer is being used.

NOTE: An incorrect altitude adjustment setting leads to poor printing quality, incorrect indication of remaining toner.

Values:

0 meter*	Specifies the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.
1000 meters	
2000 meters	
3000 meters	

Reset Defaults

Purpose:

To initialize NVM (non-volatile memory) memory for system parameters, Address Book data for fax, or Address Book data for e-mail. After executing this function and rebooting the printer, the menu parameters or data are reset to their default values.

Values:

Reset Defaults and Restart Printer	Click **Start** to initialize the system parameters.
Reset Defaults of User (Fax) Section	Click **Start** to initialize the fax number entries in the Address Book.
Reset Defaults of User (Scan) Section	Click **Start** to initialize the e-mail and server address entries in the Address Book.

Non-Dell Toner

Purpose:

To use toner cartridge of another manufacturer.

> **NOTE:** Using non-Dell-brand toner cartridges may make some printer features unusable, reduce print quality and decrease the reliability of your printer. Dell recommends only new Dell-brand toner cartridges for your printer. Dell does not provide warranty coverage for problems caused by using accessories, parts, or components not supplied by Dell.

> **NOTE:** Before you use toner cartridge of another manufacturer, be sure to restart the printer.

Clock Settings

Purpose:

To set the date and time, and regional time zone of the printer.

Values:

Date Format[*1]	yy/mm/dd	Specifies the date format.
	mm/dd/yy	
	dd/mm/yy	
Time Format	12 Hour Clock[*]	Specifies the time format.
	24H	
Time Zone	Specifies the time zone.	
Set Date	Specifies the current date.	
Set Time	Specifies the current time.	

[*1] The default for **Date Format** varies depending on country-specific factory default.

Web Link Customization

Purpose:

To specify a link used for ordering consumables, which can be accessed from **Order Supplies at:** in the left frame.

Values:

Select Reorder URL	Select the **Regular** or **Premier** web address to be linked to **Order Supplies at:** in the left frame.
Regular	Displays the regular web address (**http://accessories.us.dell.com/sna**) that can be linked to **Order Supplies at:** in the left frame.
Premier	Displays the premier web address (**http://premier.dell.com**) that can be linked to **Order Supplies at:** in the left frame.

Print Server Settings

Use the **Print Server Settings** menu to set the type of printer interface and necessary conditions for communications.

The following tabbed pages are displayed in the top of the right frame.

Print Server Reports

The **Print Server Reports** tab contains the **Print Server Setup Page** and **E-Mail Alert Setup Page**.

Print Server Setup Page

Purpose:

To verify the current settings of TCP/IP (Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol) and printing ports. On this page, you can only verify the settings of items. If you want to change the settings, go to the pages in the **Print Server Settings** tab.

Values:

Ethernet[*1]	Ethernet Settings	Displays the current settings of Ethernet transmission rate and the duplex settings.
	Current Ethernet Settings	Displays the current Ethernet settings.
	MAC Address	Displays the Media Access Control (MAC) address of the printer.
Wireless[*2]	SSID	Displays the name that identifies the network.
	Network Type	Displays the network type from either the Ad-Hoc or Infrastructure mode.
	MAC Address	Displays the MAC address of the wireless printer setting.
	Link Channel	Displays the channel number of the connection.
	Link Quality	Displays the quality of the connection.
	Encryption	Displays the security method.
	Transmit Key	Displays the transmit key.

TCP/IP Settings	Host Name	Displays the host name.	
	IP Mode	Displays the IP mode.	
	IPv4	IP Address Mode	Displays the IP address mode.
		IP Address	Displays the IP address.
		Subnet Mask	Displays the subnet mask.
		Gateway Address	Displays the gateway address.
	IPv6	Use Manual Address	Displays the manual IP address.
		Manual Address	Displays the IP address.
		Stateless Address 1-3	Displays the stateless addresses.
		Link Local Address	Displays the link local address.
		Manual Gateway Address	Displays the gateway address.
		Auto Configure Gateway Address	Displays the gateway address.
DNS	IPv4	Get DNS Server Address from DHCP	Displays if the printer receives the DNS server address automatically from the DHCP server.
		Manual DNS Server Address	Displays the DNS server address.
	IPv6	Get DNS Server Address from DHCPv6-lite	Displays if the printer receives the DNS server address automatically from the DHCPv6-lite server.
		Manual DNS Server Address	Displays the DNS server address.

LPD	Port Settings	Displays the port status.
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.
Bonjour (mDNS)	Port Settings	Displays the port status.
Port9100	Port Settings	Displays the port status.
	Port Number	Displays the port number.
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.
HTTP	Port Settings	Displays the port status.
	Port Number	Displays the port number.
	Simultaneous Connections	Displays the number of connections received simultaneously by the client.
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.
WSD	Port Settings	Displays the WSD (Web Services on Devices) port status.
	Port Number	Displays the WSD port number.
	Receive Time-Out	Displays the receive time-out period.
	Notification Time-Out	Displays the notification time-out period.
	Maximum Number of TTL	Displays the maximum number of TTLs.
	Maximum Number of Notification	Displays the maximum number of notifications.
SNMP	Port Settings	Displays the port status.
LLTD	Port Settings	Displays the port status.
FTP Client	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.
	FTP Passive	Displays whether to enable the FTP Passive mode.

SMB Client	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.

[1] This item is displayed only when the printer is connected with a wired network.

[2] This item is displayed only when the printer is connected with a wireless network.

E-Mail Alert Setup Page

Purpose:

To verify the current settings of SMTP/POP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol/Post Office Protocol) used for the e-mail feature and E-Mail Alerts feature. In this page, you can only verify the settings of items. If you want to change the settings, go to the pages in the **Print Server Settings** tab.

Values:

E-Mail Server Settings	Port Status	Displays the port status.
	Primary SMTP Gateway	Displays the primary SMTP gateway.
	SMTP Port Number	Displays the SMTP port number.
	E-Mail Send Authentication	Displays the authentication method for outgoing e-mail.
	POP3 Server Address	Displays the POP3 server address.
	POP3 Port Number	Displays the POP3 port number.
	Reply Address	Displays the reply e-mail address sent with each E-mail Alert.
	SMTP Server Connection	Displays the status of the SMTP server connection.

E-Mail Alert Settings	E-Mail List 1	Displays the acceptable e-mail addresses for the E-Mail Alert feature specified in **E-Mail List 1**.	
	Select Alerts for List 1	Supplies Alerts	Displays the e-mail alert receive status for consumables.
		Paper Handling Alerts	Displays the e-mail alert receive status for paper handling.
		Service Call	Displays the e-mail alert receive status for service calls.
	E-Mail List 2	Displays the acceptable e-mail addresses for the E-Mail Alert feature specified in **E-Mail List 2**.	
	Select Alerts for List 2	Supplies Alerts	Displays the e-mail alert receive status for consumables.
		Paper Handling Alerts	Displays the e-mail alert receive status for paper handling.
		Service Call	Displays the e-mail alert receive status for service calls.

Print Server Settings

The **Print Server Settings** tab contains the **Basic Information**, **Port Status**, **Wireless LAN**, **TCP/IP**, **E-Mail Alert**, **SNMP**, and **Scan To PC** pages.

Basic Information

Purpose:

To configure the basic information of the printer.

Values:

System Settings	Printer Name	Specifies the name of the printer using up to 31 alphanumeric characters.
	Location	Specifies the location of the printer using up to 63 alphanumeric characters.
	Contact Person	Specifies the contact name, number, and other information of the administrator and service center using up to 63 alphanumeric characters.
	Administrator E-Mail Address	Specifies the contact address of the administrator and service center using up to 63 alphanumeric characters.
	Asset Tag Number	Enter the asset tag number for the printer.
EWS Settings	Auto Refresh	Automatically refreshes the contents of the status display pages.
	Auto Refresh Interval	Sets the time interval for refreshing the contents of the status display pages automatically from 15 to 600 seconds.

NOTE: The **Auto Refresh** feature is effective for the contents of the top frame, **Printer Status page**, **Job List page**, and **Completed Jobs page**.

Port Settings

Purpose:

To enable or disable printing connectors and management protocol features.

Values:

Ethernet[1]	Ethernet Settings	Auto*	Detects Ethernet transmission rate and the duplex settings automatically.
		10Base-T Half-Duplex	Selects 10Base-T Half-Duplex as the default value.
		10Base-T Full-Duplex	Selects 10Base-T Full-Duplex as the default value.
		100Base-TX Half-Duplex	Selects 100Base-TX Half-Duplex as the default value.
		100Base-TX Full-Duplex	Selects 100Base-TX Full-Duplex as the default value.
	Current Ethernet Settings		Displays the current settings of Ethernet.
	MAC Address		Displays the MAC address of the printer.
Port Status	LPD		Specifies whether to enable LPD.
	Port9100		Specifies whether to enable Port9100.
	E-Mail Alert		Specifies whether to enable the E-Mail Alert feature.
	SNMP		Specifies whether to enable the SNMP.
	WSD		Specifies whether to enable the WSD port.
	Bonjour (mDNS)		Specifies whether to enable the Bonjour(mDNS) feature.
	Status Messenger		Specifies whether to enable the Status Messenger.
	LLTD		Specifies whether to enable LLTD.

[1] This item is available only when the printer is connected with a wired network.

NOTE: The settings in the **Port Settings** page will be valid only when the printer is rebooted. When you change or configure the settings, click the **Apply New Settings** button to apply the new settings.

Wireless LAN (Dell 1355cnw Multifunction Color Printer only)

Purpose:

To configure wireless network settings.

To connect the printer with a wireless network, be sure to disconnect the cable.

📝 **NOTE:** Once wireless LAN is activated, wired LAN protocol will be disabled.

Values:

Wireless Settings	SSID	Specifies the name that identifies the wireless network using up to 32 alphanumeric characters.
	Network Type	Specifies the network type from either **Ad-Hoc** or **Infrastructure**.
	MAC Address	Displays the MAC address of the wireless network setting of the printer.
	Link Channel	Displays the channel number of the wireless connection of the printer.
	Link Quality	Displays the quality of the wireless network connection of the printer.

Security Settings	Encryption	Select the security method from the list.	
		No Security*	Specifies **No Security** to configure the wireless setting without specifying a security method from WEP, WPA-PSK AES/WPA2-PSK AES, and WPA-PSK TKIP.
		WEP 64 Bit ASCII (5 Bytes)	Specifies the WEP 64 Bit ASCII to use through the wireless network.
		WEP 128 Bit ASCII (13 Bytes)	Specifies the WEP 128 Bit ASCII to use through the wireless network.
		WEP 64 Bit Hex (10 Bytes)	Specifies the WEP 64 Bit Hex to use through the wireless network.
		WEP 128 Bit Hex (26 Bytes)	Specifies the WEP 128 Bit Hex to use through the wireless network.
		WPA-PSK AES[*1]	Specifies the WPA-PSK AES to use through the wireless network.
		WPA2-PSK AES[*1]	Specifies the WPA2-PSK AES to use through the wireless network.
		WPA-PSK TKIP	Specifies the WPA-PSK TKIP to use through the wireless network.
WEP Key 1		Enter the WEP key when **WEP** is selected from **Encryption**.	
Re-enter WEP Key 1		Enter the WEP key 1 again to confirm.	
WEP Key 2		Enter the WEP key when **WEP** is selected from **Encryption**.	
Re-enter WEP Key 2		Enter the WEP key 2 again to confirm.	
WEP Key 3		Enter the WEP key when **WEP** is selected from **Encryption**.	
Re-enter WEP Key 3		Enter the WEP key 3 again to confirm.	

WEP Key 4	Enter the WEP key when **WEP** is selected from **Encryption**.
Re-enter WEP Key 4	Enter the WEP key 4 again to confirm.
Transmit Key	Specifies the transmit key type from the list.
Pass Phrase	Specifies the pass phrase.
Re-enter Pass Phrase	Enter the pass phrase again to confirm.

*1 This item is available only when the Infrastructure mode is selected for Network Type.

NOTE: This item is available only when the printer is connected with a wireless network.

TCP/IP

Purpose:

To configure the IP address, subnet mask, and gateway address of the printer.

Values:

TCP/IP Settings	Host Name	Specifies the host name.	
	IP Mode	Specifies the IP mode.	
	IPv4	IP Address Mode	Selects the IP address mode.
		Manual IP Address	Manually sets the IP address.
		Manual Subnet Mask	Manually sets the subnet mask.
		Manual Gateway Address	Manually sets the gateway address.
	IPv6	Use Manual Address	To set the IP address manually.
		Manual Address	Manually sets the IP address. To specify an IPv6 address, enter the address followed by a slash (/) and then "64". For details, consult your system administrator.
		Stateless Address 1-3	Displays the stateless addresses.
		Link Local Address	Displays the link local address.
		Manual Gateway Address	Manually sets the gateway address.
		Auto Configure Gateway Address	Displays the gateway address.

DNS	DNS Domain Name	Specifies the domain name of the domain name server. Up to 255 alphanumeric characters, periods, and hyphens can be used. If you need to specify more than one domain name, separate them using a comma or semicolon.	
	IPv4	Get DNS Server Address from DHCP	Specifies whether to get the DNS server address automatically from the DHCP server.
		Manual DNS Server Address	Sets the DNS server address.
	IPv6	Get DNS Server Address from DHCPv6-lite	Specifies whether to get the DNS server address automatically from the DHCPv6-lite server.
		Manual DNS Server Address	Sets the DNS server address.
LPD	Connection Time-Out	Sets the connection time-out period from 1 to 1000 seconds.	
Port9100	Port Number	Sets the port number from 9000 to 9999.	
	Connection Time-Out	Sets the connection time-out period between 1 and 1000 seconds.	
HTTP	Port Number	Sets the port number. This must be 80 or between 8000 and 9999.	
	Simultaneous Connections	Displays the maximum number of connections received simultaneously by the client.	
	Connection Time-Out	Sets the connection time-out period from 1 to 255 seconds.	

WSD	Port Number	Sets the port number. This must be 80 or between 8000 and 9999.
	Receive Time-Out	Sets the receive time-out period from 1 to 65535 seconds.
	Notification Delivery Time-Out	Sets the notification time-out period from 1 to 60 seconds.
	Maximum Number of TTL	Sets the maximum number of TTL from 1 to 10.
	Maximum Number of Notification	Sets the maximum number of notifications from 10 to 20.

E-Mail Alert

Purpose:

To configure settings for **E-Mail Alert**. This page can also be displayed by clicking **E-Mail Alert** in the left frame.

Values:

E-Mail Server Settings	Primary SMTP Gateway	Sets the primary SMTP gateway.
	SMTP Port Number	Specifies the SMTP port number. This must be 25, 587 or between 5000 and 65535.
	E-Mail Send Authentication	Specifies the authentication method for outgoing e-mail.
	SMTP Login User	Specifies the SMTP login user. Up to 63 alphanumeric characters, periods, hyphens, underscores, and at symbols (@) can be used. If specifying more than one address, separate them using commas.
	SMTP Login Password	Specifies the SMTP account password using up to 31 alphanumeric characters.
	Re-enter SMTP Login Password	Enter the SMTP account password again to confirm.
	POP3 Server Address	Specifies the POP3 server address in IP address format of "aaa.bbb.ccc.ddd" or as a DNS host name using up to 63 characters.
	POP3 Port Number	Specifies the POP3 server port number. This must be 110 or between 5000 and 65535.
	POP User Name	Specifies the POP3 account user name. Up to 63 alphanumeric characters, periods, hyphens, underscores, and at symbols (@) can be used. If specifying more than one address, separate them using commas.
	POP User Password	Specifies the POP3 account password using up to 31 alphanumeric characters.
	Re-enter POP User Password	Enter the password again to confirm.
	Reply Address	Designates the reply e-mail address sent with each E-mail Alert.
	SMTP Server Connection	Displays the status of the SMTP server connection.

E-Mail Alert Settings	E-Mail List 1	Sets acceptable e-mail addresses for the E-Mail Alert feature using up to 255 alphanumeric characters.	
	Select Alerts for List 1	**Supplies Alerts**	Specifies whether to receive an e-mail alert for consumables.
		Paper Handling Alerts	Specifies whether to receive an e-mail alert for paper handling.
		Service Call	Specifies whether to receive an e-mail alert for service calls.
	E-Mail List 2	Sets acceptable e-mail addresses for the E-Mail Alert feature using up to 255 alphanumeric characters.	
	Select Alerts for List 2	**Supplies Alerts**	Specifies whether to receive an e-mail alert for consumables.
		Paper Handling Alerts	Specifies whether to receive an e-mail alert for paper handling.
		Service Call	Specifies whether to receive an e-mail alert for service calls.

SNMP

Purpose:

To configure the detailed settings of SNMP.

Values:

Community Name	Community Name (Read only)	Specifies the community name to access (read only) data using up to 31 alphanumeric characters. The original setting will remain valid if nothing is entered. Characters entered for community name in the previous settings will not be displayed on the screen. The default Read Community is public.
	Re-enter Community Name (Read only)	Enter the community name to access (read only) data again to confirm.
	Community Name (Read/Write)	Specifies the community name to access (read and write) data using up to 31 alphanumeric characters. The original setting will remain valid if nothing is entered. Characters entered for community name in the previous settings will not be displayed on the screen. The default Read/Write Community is private.
	Re-enter Community Name (Read/Write)	Enter the community name to access (read and write) data again to confirm.
	Community Name (Trap)	Specifies the community name used for trap up to 31 alphanumeric characters. The original settings will remain valid if nothing is entered. Characters entered for community name in the previous settings will not be displayed on the screen. The default Trap Community is " " (NULL).
	Re-enter Community Name (Trap)	Enter the community name used for trap again to confirm.

Trap Notification 1-4	Trap Address Type	Select the trap address type from the list. Selecting **Off** clears the settings in **Trap Address**, **Port Number**, and **Notify**, and does not notify trap occurrence. Selecting **IPv4** or **IPv6** allows you to enter **Trap Address**.
	Trap Address	Specifies the IP address and IP socket in the following format: • IPv4 Specifies the IP address and IP socket in the nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn:mmmmm format. Each section of "nnn" is a variable value between 0 and 255. Note that values 127 and 224-254 are not valid for the first three-digits only. IP socket mmmmm is a variable value between 0 and 65535. • IPv6 Specifies the IP address and IP socket in the xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:mmmmm format. Each section of "xxxx" is a hexadecimal variable value between 0 and ffff. IP socket mmmmm is a variable value between 0 and 65535.
	Trap Notification (IP) Port Number	Enter the SNMP trap destination port number.
	Notify	Specifies whether to notify trap occurrence.
Authenticate Error Trap		Specifies whether to notify Authenticate Error Trap.

Scan to PC

Purpose:

To specify the client when scanning data.

Values:

FTP Client	Connection Time-Out	Sets the connection time-out period from 1 to 60 seconds.
	FTP Passive	Sets whether to enable the FTP Passive mode.

SMB Client	Connection Time-Out	Sets the connection time-out period from 1 to 60 seconds.

Other Features

The **Other Features** tab contains the **Set Password** and **Reset Print Server** pages.

Set Password

Purpose:

To set or change the password that is required to access the setup parameters of the printer from the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

This page can also be displayed by clicking **Set Password** in the left frame.

Values:

Administrator Password	Sets the password using up to 10 alphanumeric characters. The password will appear as asterisks (*) in the field when it is entered.
Re-enter Administrator Password	Enter the password again to confirm.

📝 **NOTE:** If you forgot your password, initialize NVM (non-volatile memory) to restore the password to the default (NULL). See "Reset Print Server" on page 178.

📝 **NOTE:** When you change the password to lock the operator panel, set the password from **Panel Lock Set** in the **Printer Settings**.

Reset Print Server

Purpose:

To initialize NVM (non-volatile memory) for the network feature and reboot the printer. You can also initialize the NVM of the printer from **Reset Defaults** in the **Printer Settings** menu.

Values:

Initialize NIC NVRAM Memory and restart printer.	Click the **Start** button to initialize NVM. Network settings will revert to the factory default settings and reboot the network capability.

Restart Printer	Click the **Start** button to reboot the printer.

Print Volume

Use the **Print Volume** menu to verify the number of printed pages.

Values:

Printer Page Count	Displays the total number of pages printed since the printer was shipped from the factory.
Paper Used	Displays the number of pages printed for each paper size.

Address Book

The **Address Book** menu contains the **Fax/E-mail** and **Server Address** pages.

Fax/E-mail

The **Fax/E-mail** page contains the following subpages.

Address Book	Allows you to view, edit, or create address book entries.
Fax Group	Allows you to view, edit, or create fax group entries.
E-Mail Group	Allows you to view, edit, or create e-mail group entries.
E-Mail Default Setup	Allows you to view, edit, or set the default e-mail subject and message.

Address Book - Top Page

Purpose:

To view the address book entries registered on the **Address book** page.

Values:

Address List to:	Selecting each button displays a list of entries for the group of user IDs indicated on the button.
ID:Name	Displays a user ID and the name of the user registered under that user ID. IDs without an entry show (**Not in Use**) in the **Name** column.

Phone Number	Displays the phone number of the user.
E-Mail Address	Displays the e-mail address of the user.
Delete	Deletes the entry for the selected user ID.
Confirm/Change	Displays a dialog box where you can edit the entry of the selected user ID.
Create	Displays a dialog box where you can create a new entry under the selected user ID.

Address Book (Confirm/Change, Create)

Purpose:

To view or edit the address book entries on the **Address Book** page, or create a new entry. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click the **Confirm/Change** or **Create** button on the **Address Book** top page.

Values:

ID (Fax Speed Dial)	Displays the selected user ID.
Name	Allows you to view or edit the name of the user registered under the user ID, or enter a name for the new entry.
Phone Number	Allows you to view or edit the phone number of the user, or enter a phone number for the new entry.
E-mail Address	Allows you to view or edit the e-mail address of the user, or enter an e-mail address for the new entry.
Delete	Click this button to delete the entry for the user ID. This button is available only on the dialog box for editing an existing entry.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Restore Settings	Click this button to restore the previous settings.
Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

Address Book (Delete)

Purpose:

To delete the address book entries registered on the **Address Book** page. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click the **Delete** button on the **Address Book** top page.

Values:

ID (Fax Speed Dial)	Displays the selected user ID.
Name	Displays the name of the of the user registered under the selected user ID.
Phone Number	Displays the phone number of the user.
E-mail Address	Displays the e-mail address of the user.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

FAX Group - Top Page

Purpose:

To view the fax group entries registered on the **Fax Group** page.

Values:

GroupID:Name	Displays a fax group ID and the assigned group name. IDs without an entry show (**Not in Use**) in the **Name** column.
Delete	Deletes the entry for the selected group ID.
Confirm / Change	Displays a dialog box where you can edit the entry for the selected group ID.
Create	Displays a dialog box where you can create a new entry under the selected group ID.

FAX Group (Confirm/Change, Create)

Purpose:

To view or edit the fax number group entries on the **Fax Group** page, or create a new entry. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click the **Confirm/Change** or **Create** button on the **Fax Group** top page.

Values:

Fax Group	ID	Displays the selected group ID.
	Name	Allows you to view or edit the name assigned for the group ID, or enter a new group name.
FAX Speed Dial	Address List to:	Selecting each button displays a list of entries for the group of speed dial codes indicated on the button.
	ID:Name	Displays a speed dial code and the names of an entry registered under the speed dial code. Speed dial codes without an entry show (**Not in Use**) in the **Name** column.
	Phone Number	Allows you to view or edit the fax number of an entry registered under the selected speed dial code, or enter a fax number for the new entry.
	Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
	Restore Settings	Click this button to restore the previous settings.
	Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

FAX Group (Delete)

Purpose:

To delete the fax number group entries registered on the **Fax Group** page. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click the **Delete** button on the **Fax Group** top page.

Values:

ID	Displays the selected group ID.
Name	Displays the name assigned for the group ID.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

E-Mail Group - Top Page

Purpose:

To view the e-mail address entries registered on the **E-Mail Group** page.

Values:

GroupID:Name	Displays a group ID and the assigned group name. IDs without an entry show **(Not in Use)** in the **Name** column.
Delete	Deletes the entry for the selected group ID.
Confirm/ Change	Displays a dialog box where you can edit the entry for the selected group ID.
Create	Displays a dialog box where you can create a new entry under the selected group ID.

E-Mail Group (Confirm/Change, Create)

Purpose:

To view or edit the e-mail address group entries on the **E-Mail Group** page, or create a new entry. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click the **Confirm/Change** or **Create** button on the **E-Mail Group** top page.

Values:

E-Mail Group	**ID**	Displays the selected group ID.
	Name	Allows you to view or edit the name assigned for the group ID, or enter a new group name.
E-Mail Address	**Address List to:**	Selecting each button displays a list of entries for the group of IDs indicated on the button.
	ID:Name	Displays a user ID and the name of the user registered under that user ID. IDs without an entry show **(Not in Use)** in the **Name** column.
	Address	Allows you to view or edit the e-mail address of an entry registered under the selected user ID, or enter an e-mail address for the new entry.
	Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
	Restore Settings	Click this button to restore the previous settings.
	Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

E-Mail Group (Delete)

Purpose:

To delete the e-mail group entries registered on the **E-Mail Group** page. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click the **Delete** button on the **E-mail Group** top page.

Values:

ID	Displays the selected group ID.
Name	Displays the name assigned for the group ID.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

E-Mail Default Setup

Purpose:

To set the default e-mail subject and message.

Values:

Default Subject	Allows you to enter the default e-mail subject. Up to 50 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
Body Text	Allows you to enter the default e-mail message. Up to 200 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Restore Settings	Click this button to restore the previous settings.

Server Address

Server Address - Top Page

Purpose:

To view the server address entries registered on the **Server Address page**.

Values:

Address List to:	Selecting each button displays a list of entries for the group of IDs indicated on the button.
ID:Name	Displays a server ID and the name of a file directory registered under that server ID. IDs without an entry show (**Not in Use**) in the **Name** column.
Server Address	Displays the address of the file directory.
Delete	Deletes the entry for the selected server ID.
Confirm/ Change	Displays a dialog box where you can edit the entry for the selected server ID.
Create	Displays a dialog box where you can create a new entry under the selected server ID.

Server Address (Confirm/Change, Create)

Purpose:

To view or edit the server address entries on the **Server Address** page, or create a new entry. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click the **Confirm/Change** or **Create** button on the **Server Address** top page.

Values:

ID		Displays the selected server ID.
Name		Allows you to view or change the server name assigned to the server ID, or enter a new server name.
Server Type	FTP	Select this to store scanned documents on a server via the FTP protocol.
	SMB	Select this to store scanned documents on a computer via the Server Message Block (SMB) protocol.
Server Address		Allows you to view or edit the server address registered under the server ID, or enter a new server address.
Share Name		Allows you to view or edit the assigned shared name, or enter a new shared name, when **Server Type** is set to **SMB**.
Server Path		Allows you to view or edit the assigned server path, or enter a new path.

Server Port Number	Allows you to view or edit the assigned server port number, or enter a new port number. If you leave the text box blank, the default port number (FTP: 21, SMB: 139) will be used.
Login Name	Allows you to view or edit the login name that is required to access the selected protocol, or enter a new login name.
Login Password	Allows you to view or edit the password that is required to access the selected protocol, or enter a new password.
Re-enter Password	Enter the password again to confirm.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Restore Settings	Click this button to restore the previous settings.
Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

Server Address (Delete)

Purpose:

To delete the server address entries registered on the **Server Address** page. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click the **Delete** button on the **Server Address** top page.

Values:

ID	Displays the selected server ID.
Name	Displays the name assigned for the server ID.
Server Address	Displays the server address registered under the server ID.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

Tray Settings

Use the **Tray Settings** menu to set the paper size and type of paper loaded in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF).

Values:

Tray Paper Type	Sets the type of paper loaded in the MPF.
Tray Paper Size	Sets the size of paper loaded in the MPF.
Tray 1 Custom Size - Y	Sets the length of custom size paper loaded in the MPF.
Tray 1 Custom Size - X	Sets the width of custom size paper loaded in the MPF.
Display Popup	Sets whether to display a popup menu that prompts the user to set **Paper Type** and **Paper Size** when the paper is loaded in the MPF.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Restore Settings	Click this button to restore the previous settings.

12

Print Media Guidelines

Print media can be paper, labels, envelopes, and coated paper among others. Your printer provides high-quality printing on a variety of print media. Selecting the appropriate print media for your printer helps avoid printing troubles. This section describes selecting print media, caring for print media, and loading the print media in Multipurpose Feeder (MPF) or Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI).

Paper

For the best print quality in color, use 75 g/m^2 (20 lb) xerographic, grain long paper. For the best print quality in black and white, use 90 g/m^2 (24 lb) xerographic, grain long paper. Before buying large quantities of any print media, it is recommended that you try a sample first.

When loading paper, identify the recommended print side on the paper package, and load the paper accordingly. See "Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)" on page 59 and "Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)" on page 66 for detailed loading instructions.

Paper Characteristics

The following paper characteristics affect print quality and reliability. It is recommended that you follow these guidelines when evaluating new paper stock.

Weight

Both MPF and PSI automatically feed paper whose weights range from 60 to 163 g/m^2 (16 to 44 lb bond) grain long. Paper lighter than 60 g/m^2 (16 lb) may not feed properly, and could cause paper jams. For best performance, use 75 g/m^2 (20 lb bond) grain long paper.

Curl

Curl is the tendency of print media to curve at its edges. Excessive curl can cause paper feeding problems. Curl usually occurs after the paper passes through the printer, where it is exposed to high temperatures. Storing paper

unwrapped, even in the feeder, can contribute to paper curling prior to printing and cause feeding problems regardless of humidity. When printing on curled paper, straighten the paper and then insert it into the MPF or PSI.

Smoothness

The degree of paper smoothness directly affects print quality. If the paper is too rough, the toner does not fuse to the paper properly, resulting in poor print quality. If the paper is too smooth, it can cause paper feeding problems. Smoothness between 150 and 250 Sheffield points produces the best print quality.

Moisture Content

The amount of moisture in the paper affects both print quality and the ability of the printer to feed the paper properly. Leave the paper in its original packaging until you are ready to use it. This limits the exposure of the paper to moisture changes that can degrade its performance.

Grain Direction

Grain refers to the alignment of the paper fibers in a sheet of paper. Grain is either grain long, running the length of the paper, or grain short, running the width of the paper. For 60 to 135 g/m^2 (16 to 36 lb bond) paper, grain long fibers are recommended. For paper heavier than 135 g/m^2 (36 lb bond), grain short is preferred.

Fiber Content

Most high-quality xerographic paper is made from 100% chemically pulped wood. Paper containing fibers such as cotton possess characteristics that can result in degraded paper handling.

Recommended Paper

To ensure the best print quality and feed reliability, use dry 75 g/m^2 (20 lb) xerographic paper. Business paper designed for general business use also provide acceptable print quality. Only use paper able to withstand high temperatures without discoloring, bleeding, or releasing hazardous emissions. The laser printing process heats paper to high temperatures. Check with the manufacturer or vendor to determine whether the paper you have chosen is acceptable for laser printers.

📝 **NOTE:** Always print several samples before buying large quantities of any type of print media. When choosing any print media, you should consider the weight, fiber content, and color.

Unacceptable Paper

The following paper types are not recommended for use with the printer:

- Chemically treated paper used to make copies without carbon paper, also known as carbonless paper, carbonless copy paper (CCP), or no carbon required (NCR) paper
- Preprinted paper with chemicals that may contaminate the printer
- Preprinted paper that can be affected by the temperature in the fuser
- Preprinted paper that require a registration (the precise print location on the page) greater than ±0.09 inches, such as optical character recognition (OCR) forms

  In some cases, you can adjust registration with your software program to successfully print on these forms.
- Coated paper (erasable bond), synthetic paper, thermal paper
- Rough-edged, rough or heavily textured surface paper, or curled paper
- Recycled paper containing more than 25% post-consumer waste that do not meet DIN 19 309
- Multiple-part forms or documents
- Print quality may deteriorate (blank spaces or blotches may appear in the text) when printing on talc or acid paper.
- Moist paper that may cause wrinkle

Selecting Paper

Proper paper selection helps prevent jams and ensures trouble-free printing.

To help avoid jams or poor print quality:

- Always use new, dry, and undamaged paper.
- Before loading the paper, identify the recommended print side of the paper. This information is usually indicated on the paper package.
- Do not use paper that you have cut or trimmed yourself.

- Do not mix print media sizes, weights, or types in the same source. This may result in a paper jam.
- Do not remove the PSI while a job is printing.
- Ensure that the paper is properly loaded in the MPF or PSI.
- Flex paper back and forth, and then fan them. Straighten the edges of the stack on a level surface.
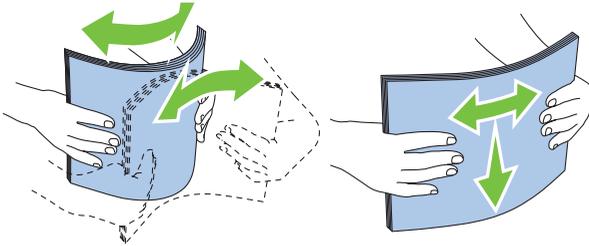
Selecting Preprinted Media and Letterhead

When selecting preprinted media and letterhead paper for the printer:

- Use grain long paper for best results.
- Use only forms and letterhead printed using an offset lithographic or engraved printing process.
- Select paper that absorb ink, but do not bleed.
- Avoid paper with rough or heavily textured surfaces.
- Use paper printed with heat-resistant inks designed for use in xerographic copiers. The ink must withstand temperatures of 225°C (437°F) without melting or releasing hazardous emissions.
- Use inks that are not affected by the resin in toner or the silicone in the fuser. Inks that are oxidation-set or oil-based should meet these requirements; latex inks might not. If you are in doubt, contact your paper supplier.

Printing on Letterhead

Check with the manufacturer or vendor to determine whether the pre-printed letterhead you have selected is acceptable for laser printers.

Page orientation is important when printing on letterhead. Use the following table for help when loading letterhead in the print media sources.

Loading Letterhead

Load the letterhead in the printer with the print side facing up. Ensure that the title on the letter head enters the printer first.
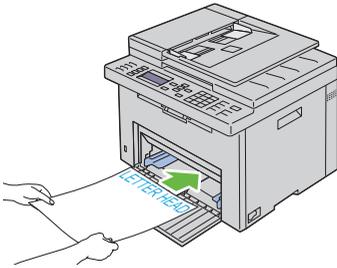
Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)   Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)
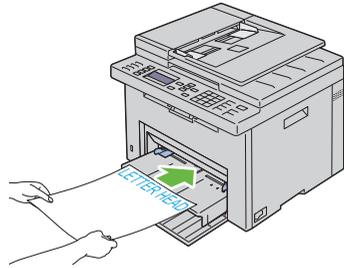
Selecting Pre-Punched Paper

Pre-punched paper brands can differ in the number and placement of holes and in manufacturing techniques. However, it may not be possible to print on the paper to depending on the placement of holes on the paper.

To select and use pre-punched paper:

* Test paper from several manufacturers before ordering and using large quantities of pre-punched paper.

* Paper should be punched at the paper manufacturer and not drilled into paper already packaged in a ream. Drilled paper can cause jams when multiple sheets feed through the printer. This may result in a paper jam.

* Pre-punched paper can include more paper dust than standard paper. Your printer may require more frequent cleaning and feed reliability may not be as good as standard paper.

* Weight guidelines for pre-punched paper are the same as non-punched paper.

Envelopes

Depending on the choice of envelopes, it is possible to expect variable levels of light wrinkling. Before buying large quantities of any print media, it is recommended that you try a sample first. See "Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)" on page 59 or "Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)" on page 66 for instructions on loading an envelope.

When printing on envelopes:

- Use only high-quality envelopes that are designed for use in laser printers.
- Set the print media source to MPF or PSI. Set the paper type to **Envelope**, and select the correct size of envelope from the printer driver.
- For best performance, use envelopes made from 75 g/m^2 (20 lb bond) paper. You can use up to 105 g/m^2 (28 lb bond) weight for the envelope feeder as long as the cotton content is 25% or less. Envelopes with 100% cotton content must not exceed 90 g/m^2 (24 lb bond) weight.
- Use only freshly unpackaged, undamaged envelopes.
- Use envelopes that can withstand temperatures of 205°C (401°F) without sealing, excessive curling, wrinkling, or releasing hazardous emissions. If you have any doubts about the envelopes you are considering, check with the envelope supplier.
- Adjust the guide to fit the width of the envelopes.
- To load envelope in MPF or PSI, the print side must be facing up.
- See "Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)" on page 59 or "Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)" on page 66 for instructions on loading an envelope.
- Use one envelope size during a print job.
- Ensure that the humidity is low because high humidity (more than 60%) and the high printing temperatures may seal the envelopes.
- For best performance, do not use envelopes that:
  - Have excessive curl or twist
  - Are stuck together or damaged in any way
  - Contain windows, holes, perforations, cutouts, embossing

- Use metal clasps, string ties, or metal folding bars
- Have an interlocking design
- Have postage stamps attached
- Have nicked edges or bent corners
- Have rough, cockle, or laid finishes

Labels

Your printer can print on many labels designed only for use with laser printers.

When selecting labels:

- Label adhesives, face sheet (printable stock), and topcoats must be able to withstand temperatures of 205°C (401°F) and pressure of 25 pounds per square inch (psi).
- Use labels that can be without sealing, excessive curling, wrinkling, or releasing hazardous emissions.
- Do not use label sheets with a slick backing material.

 NOTICE: Before buying large quantities of any print media, it is recommended that you try a sample first.

When printing on labels:

- Use labels that can withstand temperatures of 205°C (401°F) without sealing, excessive curling, wrinkling, or releasing hazardous emissions.
- Set the paper type to Label from the printer driver.
- Do not load labels together with paper in the same tray.
- Do not print within 1 mm (0.04 inches) of the die-cut.
- Do not print within 1 mm (0.04 inches) of the edge of the label, of the perforations, or between die-cuts of the label.
- Do not print a label through the printer more than once.
- Portrait orientation is preferred, especially when printing bar codes.
- Do not use labels that have exposed adhesive.
- Use full label sheets. Partial sheets may cause labels to peel off during printing, resulting in a jam.

- Do not use label sheets that have adhesive to the edge of the sheet. It is recommended that zone coating of the adhesive is done at least 1 mm (0.04 inches) away from edges. Adhesive material contaminates your printer and could void your warranty.

⚠ **CAUTION: Otherwise the printer occur in a jam and contaminate your printer and your cartridges with adhesive. As a result, could void your printer and cartridge warranties.**

Storing Print Media

For proper print media storage, the following guidelines help avoid media feeding problems and uneven print quality.

- For best results, store print media in an environment where the temperature is approximately 21°C (70°F) and the relative humidity is 40%.
- Store cartons of print media on a pallet or shelf, rather than directly on the floor.
- If you store individual packages of print media out of the original carton, ensure that they rest on a flat surface so that the edges do not buckle or curl.
- Do not place anything on top of the print media packages.

Identifying Print Media and Specifications

This section provides information on supported paper sizes, types, and specification.

Supported Paper Sizes

	Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)	Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)
A4 (210x297 mm)	Y	Y
B5 (182x257 mm)	Y	Y
A5 (148x210 mm)	Y	Y
C5 (162x229 mm)	Y	Y

	Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)	Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)
Monarch (3.875x7.5 in)	Y	Y
Monarch LEF (7.5x3.875 in)[*1]	Y	Y[*4]
Envelope #10 (4.125x9.5 in)	Y	Y
DL (110x220 mm)	Y	Y
DL LEF (220x110 mm)[*1]	Y	Y[*4]
Letter (8.5x11 in)	Y	Y
Legal (8.5x14 in)	Y	Y
Folio (8.5x13 in)	Y	Y
Executive (7.25 x 10.5 in)	Y	Y
Custom[*2*3]	Y	Y

[*1] You can place the originals in a long-edge feed direction or in a short-edge feed direction. The following illustration shows SEF and LEF. The arrow mark in the illustration shows the orientation of the paper loading.

NOTE: Not available when the XPS Printer Driver is used.

[*2] Custom width: 76.2 mm (3.00 inches) to 215.9 mm (8.50 inches)
The maximum width for envelope (DL LEF): 220.0 mm (8.66 inches)
Custom length: 127.0 mm (5.00 inches) to 355.6 mm (14.00 inches)
(For the PSI, 191.0 mm (7.50 inches) to 355.6 mm (14.00 inches))
The maximum length for envelope (Monarch LEF): 98.4 mm (3.87 inches)

[*3] Only the administrator user can set the custom size from the printer driver.

[*4] Be sure to fully insert the envelope until it stops. Otherwise, print media that is loaded on the MPF will be fed.

SEF   LEF
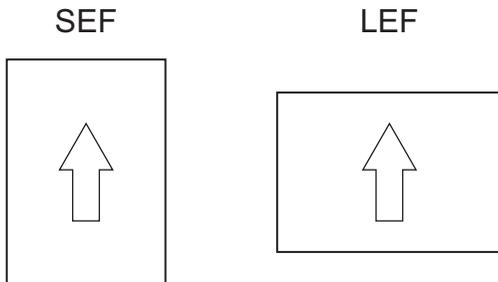
Supported Paper Types

Media	Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)	Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)
Plain	Y[*]	Y[*]
Plain Side 2	Y	Y
Plain Thick	Y	Y
Plain Thick Side 2	Y	Y
Recycled	Y	Y
Recycled Side 2	Y	Y
Label	Y	Y
Covers	Y	Y
Covers Side 2	Y	Y
Envelope	Y	Y
Coated	Y	Y
Coated Side 2	Y	Y

[*] Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Paper Type Specifications

Paper type	Weight (gsm)	Remarks
Plain Paper	60-90	-
Plain Thick Paper	91-105	-
Covers	106-163	-
Coated	106-163	Inkjet printer paper cannot be used.
Label	-	Inkjet printer paper cannot be used.
Envelopes	-	-
Recycled	60-105	-

13

Loading Print Media

Loading print media properly helps prevent jams and ensures trouble-free printing.

Before loading print media, identify the recommended print side of the print media. This information is usually on the print media package.

NOTE: After loading paper in the feeder, specify the same paper type on the operator panel.

Capacity

Multipurpose Feeder (MPF) can hold:

- 150 sheets of standard paper
- 16.2 mm (0.64 inches) of thick paper
- One sheet of coated paper
- 16.2 mm (0.64 inches) of post cards
- Five envelopes
- 16.2 mm (0.64 inches) of labels

Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI) can hold:

- 10 sheets of standard paper or one sheet of other paper

Print Media Dimensions

Both MPF and PSI accept print media within the following dimensions:

- Width — 76.2 mm (3.00 inches) to 215.9 mm (8.50 inches)
- Length — 127.0 mm (5.00 inches) to 355.6 mm (14.00 inches)

Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)

🖉 **NOTE:** Use only laser print media. Do not use ink jet paper in this printer.

1 Open the front cover.
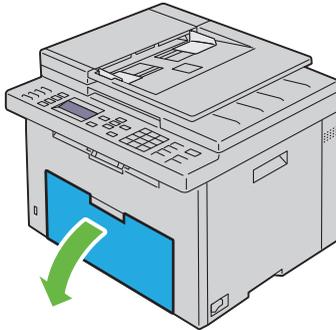
2 Pull the priority sheet inserter (PSI) out.
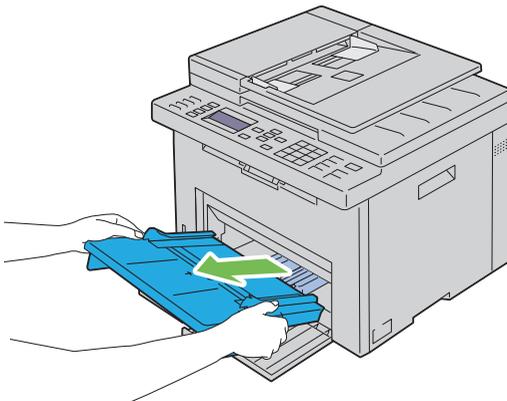
3 Pull the length guide forward until it stops.
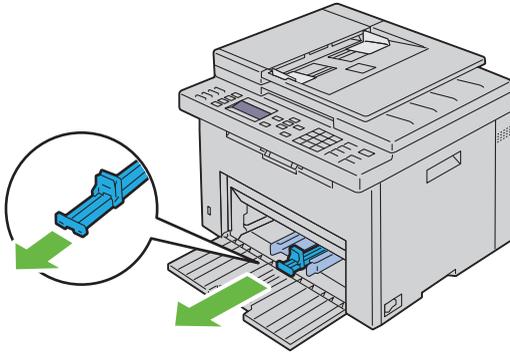
4 Pull the MPF extension forward until it stops.
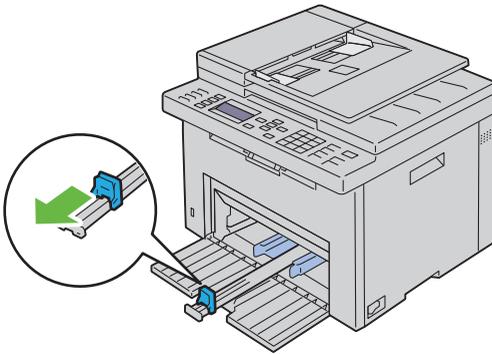
5 Adjust the paper width guides to their maximum width.
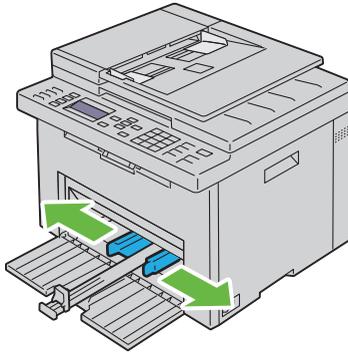
6 Before loading the print media, flex the sheets back and forth, and then fan them. Straighten the edges of the stack on a level surface.
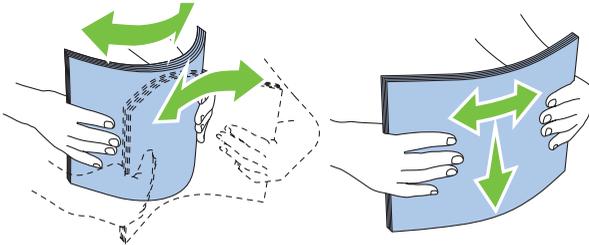
7 Load print media on the MPF with the top edge first and with the recommended print side facing up.
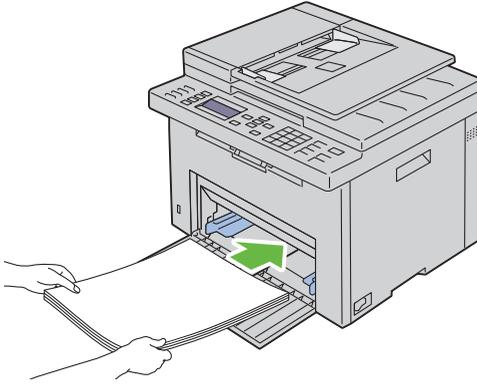
8 Adjust the width guides until they rest lightly against the edges of the stack of print media.
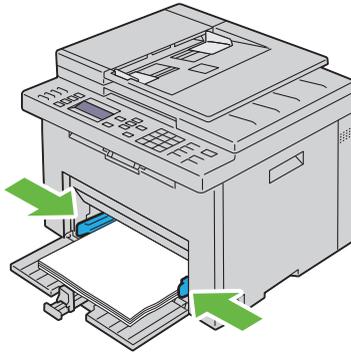
9 Slide the length guide towards the printer until it touches the print media.
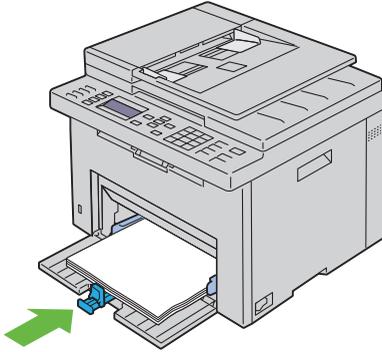
💋 **NOTE:** Depending on the size of print media, first slide the MPF extension backward until it stops, and then pinch the length guide and slide it backward until it touches print media.
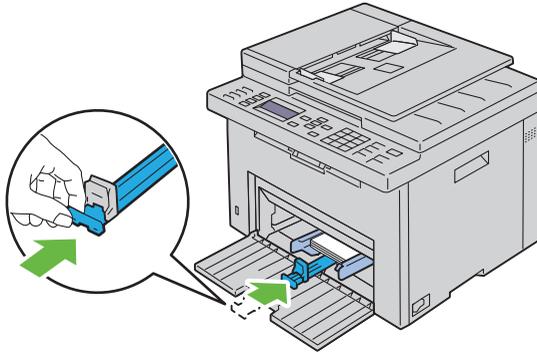
10 Insert the PSI into the printer and then align the PSI to the marking on the paper tray.
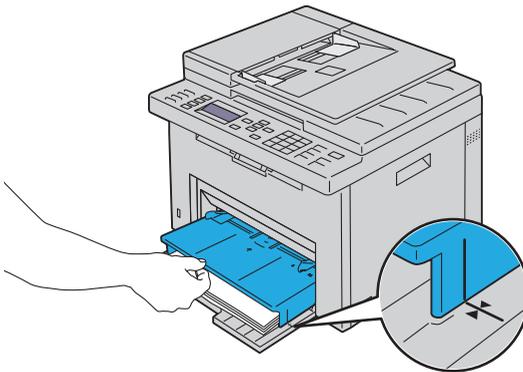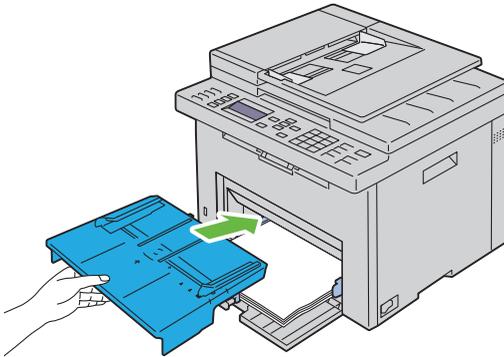
11 Select the paper type from the operator panel if any print media other than plain print media is loaded. If a user-specified print media is loaded in the MPF, you must specify the paper size setting by using the operator panel.

✍ **NOTE:** For standard-size papers, adjust the guides first and then set papers.

Loading an Envelope in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)

✍ **NOTE:** When you print on envelopes, be sure to specify the envelope setting on the printer driver. If not specified, the print image will be rotated 180 degrees.

When Loading Envelope#10, DL, or Monarch

Load envelopes with the side to be printed on facing up, the flap side facing down, and the flap turned to the right.

To prevent DL and Monarch from being wrinkled, they are recommended to be loaded with the print-side facing up, flap opened, and facing you.

When Loading C5

Load envelopes with the side to be printed on facing up, with the flap open.

⊙ **NOTICE:** Never use envelopes with windows, or coated linings. These lead to paper jams and can cause damage to the printer.

✐ **NOTE:** If you do not load envelopes in the MPF right after they have been removed from the packaging, they may bulge. To avoid jams, flatten them as shown below when loading them in the MPF.
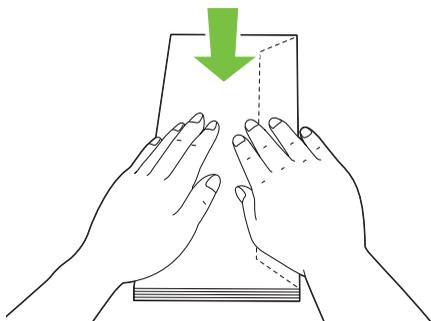
✐ **NOTE:** If envelopes are still not fed correctly, add some bending to the flap of the envelopes as shown in the following illustration.
The amount of the bending shall be 5 mm (0.20 inches) or less.
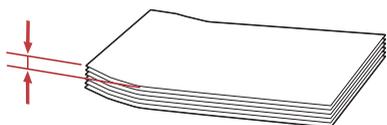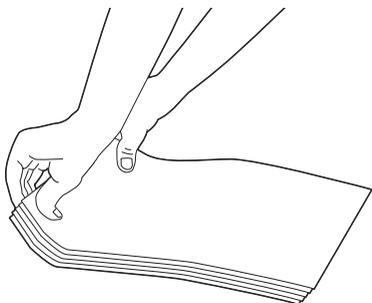
> **NOTE:** To confirm the correct orientation of each print media such as envelopes, see the instruction on the Envelope/Paper Setup Navigator on the printer driver.

Loading Letterhead

Load the letter head in the printer with the print side facing up. Ensure that the title on the letter head enters the printer first.
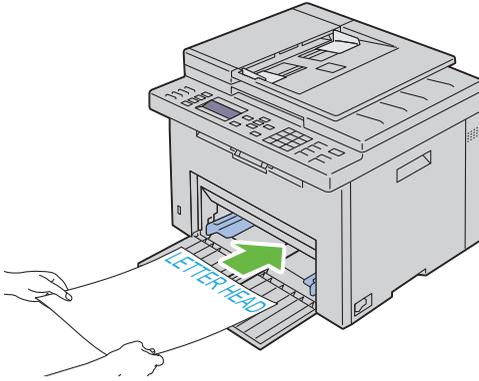
Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)

✏ **NOTE:** To avoid paper jams, do not remove the PSI while printing is in progress.

✏ **NOTE:** Use only laser print media. Do not use ink jet paper in this printer.

1   Open the front cover.
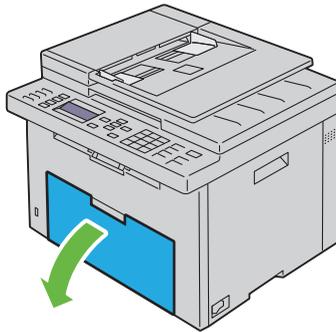
2   Slide the PSI forward, and then align the PSI to the marking on the paper tray.
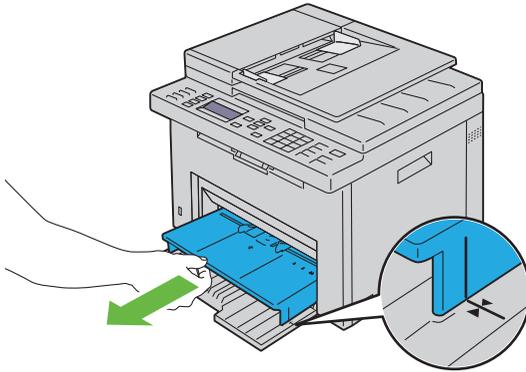
3 Adjust the paper width guides to their maximum width.
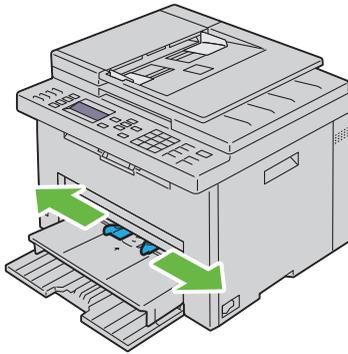
4 Before loading the print media, flex the sheets back and forth, and then fan them. Straighten the edges of the stack on a level surface.
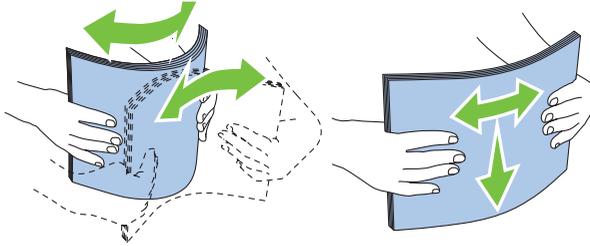
5 Load print media on the PSI with the top edge first and with the recommended print side facing up.
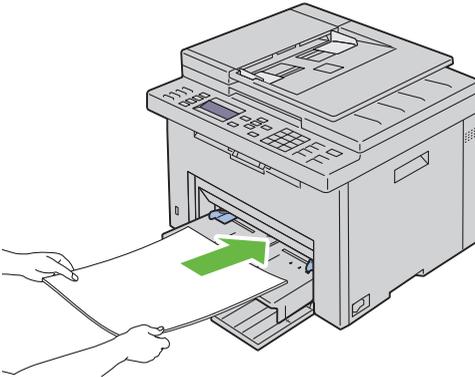
6 Adjust the width guides until they rest lightly against the edges of the stack of print media.
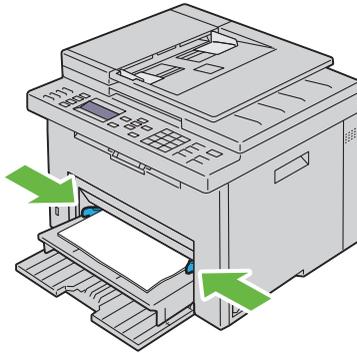
7 Select the paper type from the printer driver if the loaded print media is not standard plain paper. If a user-specified print media is loaded in the PSI, you must specify the paper size setting by using the printer driver.

Loading an Envelope in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)

📝 **NOTE:** Be sure to fully insert the envelope until it stops. Otherwise, print media that is loaded on the MPF will be fed.

📝 **NOTE:** When you print on envelopes, be sure to specify the envelope setting on the printer driver. If not specified, the print image will be rotated 180 degrees.

When Loading Envelope#10, DL, or Monarch

Load envelopes with the side to be printed on facing up, the flap side facing down, and the flap turned to the right.

To prevent DL and Monarch from being wrinkled, they are recommended to be loaded with the print-side facing up, flap opened, and facing you.

When Loading C5

Load envelopes with the side to be printed on facing up, with the flap open.

⬤ **NOTICE:** Never use envelopes with windows, or coated linings. These lead to paper jams and can cause damage to the printer.

✐ **NOTE:** If you do not load envelopes in the PSI right after they have been removed from the packaging, they may bulge. To avoid jams, flatten them as shown below when loading them in the PSI.
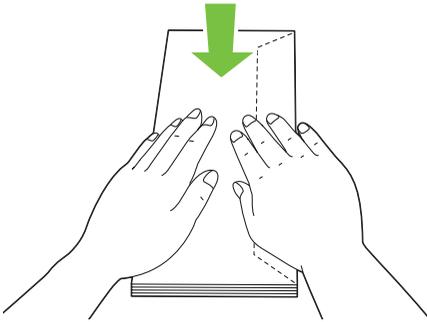
✐ **NOTE:** If envelopes are still not fed correctly, add some bending to the flap of the envelopes as shown in the following illustration.
The amount of the bending shall be 5 mm (0.20 inches) or less.
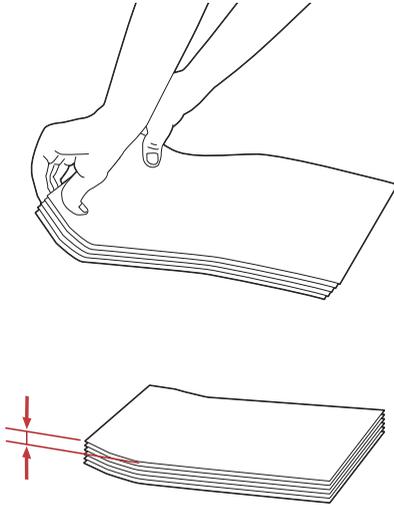
 NOTE: To confirm the correct orientation of each print media such as envelopes, see the instruction on the Envelope/Paper Setup Navigator on the printer driver.

Loading Letterhead

Load the letter head in the printer with the print side facing up. Ensure that the title on the letter head enters the printer first.
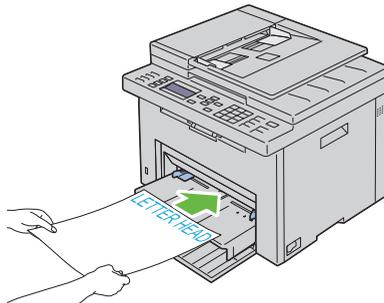
Manual Duplex Printing (Windows Printer Driver Only)

> **NOTE:** When printing on curled paper, straighten the paper and then insert it into the feeder.

> **NOTE:** The XPS printer driver does not support manual duplex printing.

When you start manual duplex printing, the instruction window appears. Note that the window cannot be reopened once it is closed. Do not close the window until duplex printing is complete.

Manual duplex printing can be done using the multipurpose feeder or the priority sheet inserter.

The Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)

1   First print the even pages (rear sides).
    For a six page document, rear sides are printed in the order of page 6, page 4, then page 2.
    (**Data LED**) blinks and the message appears on the LCD when the even pages finish printing.
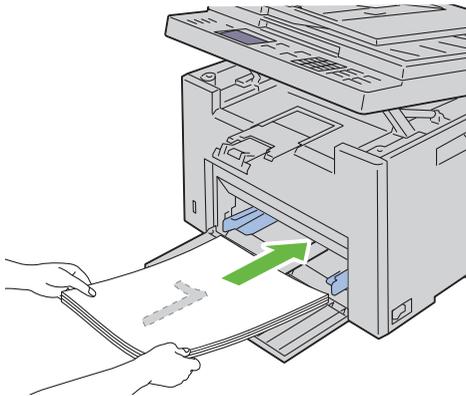
2   After the even pages are printed, remove the paper stack from the output tray and set them as they are (with the blank side facing up).

> **NOTE:** Warped or curled prints can cause paper jams. Straighten them before setting them.

3 Stack the prints and set them as they are (with the blank side facing up) into the MPF. Ensure that `Insert Output into paper tray` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button. Print pages in the order page 1 (rear of page 2), page 3 (rear of page 4), then page 5 (rear of page 6).
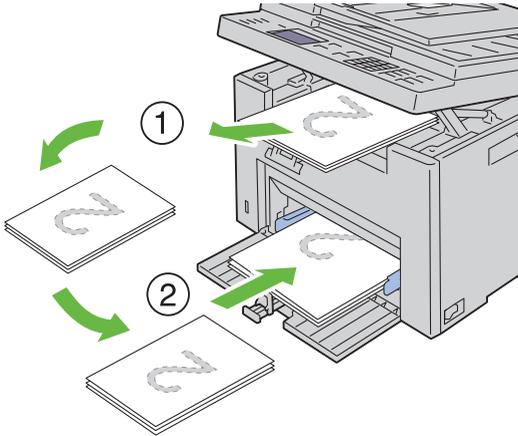
📝 **NOTE:** Printing on both sides of the paper is not possible if the document consists of various sizes of papers.

The Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)

1 First print the even pages.

For a six page document, even pages are printed in the order page 2, page 4, then page 6.

📄 **(Data LED)** blinks and the message appears on the LCD when the even pages finish printing.

2 After the even pages are printed, remove the paper stack from the output tray and set them as they are (with the blank side facing up).

> ![note icon] **NOTE:** Warped or curled prints can cause paper jams. Straighten them before setting them.

3 Next stack the prints and set them as they are (with the blank side face up) into the PSI. Ensure that `Insert Output into paper tray` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button. Print pages in the order page 1 (rear of page 2), page 3 (rear of page 4), then page 5 (rear of page 6).
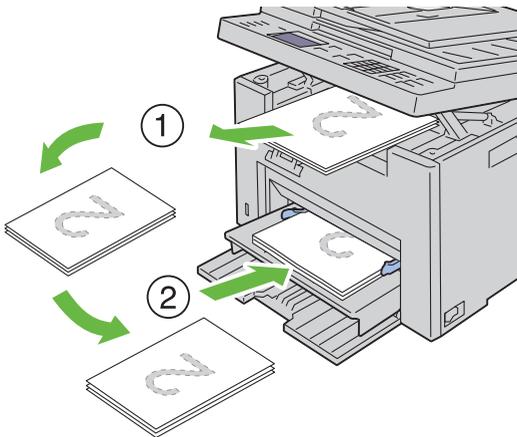
> 📝 **NOTE:** Printing on both sides of the paper is not possible if the document consists of various sizes of papers.

Using the Output Tray Extension

The output tray extension is designed to prevent print media from falling from the printer after the print job is complete.

Before printing a document, ensure that the output tray extension is fully extended.
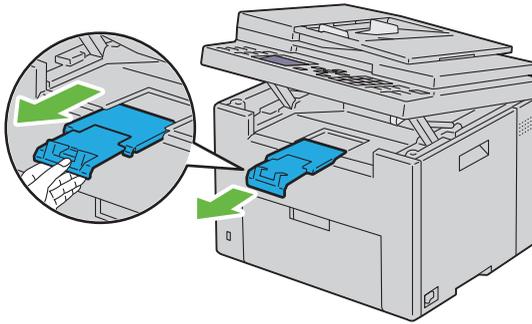
> 📝 **NOTE:** When you pull out envelopes or small size print media, lift up the scanner unit.

14
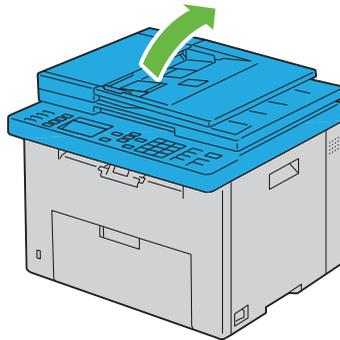
Operator Panel

Using the Operator Panel Buttons

The operator panel has a 4-line by 28-character liquid crystal display (LCD), light-emitting diodes (LED), control buttons, and numeric keypad, which allow you to control the printer.
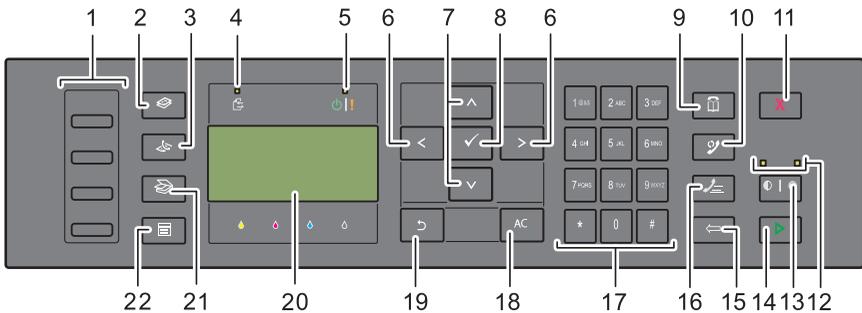
1 One Touch Dial button

- Calls up the stored Fax number registered in the Phone Book. The first four fax numbers in the Phone Book are assigned to the buttons in row order, starting from the top corner.

2 (Copy) button

- Moves to the top level of the Copy menu.

3 (Fax) button

- Moves to the top level of the Fax menu.

4 Data LED

- Lights up for incoming, outgoing, or pending Fax jobs.

5 Ready / Error LED

- Lights up when the printer is ready. (Ready LED)
- Lights up when the printer has an error. (Error LED)

6   >< button
  • Moves a cursor or highlight right or left.

7   ∧∨ button
  • Moves a cursor or highlight up or down.

8   ✓ (**Set**) button
  • Confirms the entry of values.

9   📖 (**Contacts**) button
  • Moves to the Address Book menu for the Fax and Scan services.

10 📞 (**Re-dial / Pause**) button
  • Re-dials a telephone number.
  • Pauses a telephone number.

11 ✗ (**Cancel**) button
  • Cancels the current processing or pending job.

12 B&W / Color LED
  • Lights up to indicate which color mode is selected.

13 ◐ | 🔵 (**Color Mode**) button
  • Switches the color mode.

14 ▷ (**Start**) button
  • Starts a job.

15 ⇐ (**Backspace**) button
  • Deletes characters and numbers.

16 📞 (**Speed Dial**) button
  • Calls up a stored telephone number.

17 Numeric keypad
  • Enters characters and numbers.

18 AC (**All Clear**) button
  • Resets the current setting, and returns to the top menu.

19 ↺ (**Back**) button
  • Returns to the previous screen.

20 LCD Panel

- Displays various settings, instructions, and error messages.

21 ⬂ (**Scan**) button

- Moves to the top level of the Scan menu.

22 ☰ (**Menu**) button

- Moves to the top level of the Print From USB Memory, Job Status, and System menus.

📝 **NOTE:** Moving to a different menu or returning to a previous screen cancels the current entry or setting. Make sure to press the ✓ button to save the current entry or setting.

📝 **NOTE:** For details on how to use the numeric keypad to enter alphanumeric characters, see "Using the Numeric Keypad to Enter Characters" on page 285.

Printing a Panel Settings Page

The panel settings page shows current settings for the operator panel menus.

The Operator Panel

1 Press the ☰ (**Menu**) button.

2 Press the ∨ button until System is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

3 Press the ∨ button until Report/List is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

4 Press the ∨ button until Panel Settings is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

The panel settings page is printed.

The Tool Box

📝 **NOTE:**

1 Click **Start→ All Programs→ Dell Printers→ Dell 1355 Multifunction Color Printer→ Tool Box**.

📝 **NOTE:** When multiple printer drivers are installed on your computer, the **Select Printer** window appears. In this case, click the name of this printer listed in **Printer Name**, and then click **OK**.

The **Tool Box** opens.

2 Click the **Printer Settings Report** tab.

3 Select **Reports** from the list at the left side of the page.

The **Reports** page is displayed.

4 Click the **Panel Settings** button.

The panel settings page is printed.

Printing, Copying, Scanning, and Faxing

15

Printing

This chapter covers tips for printing, how to print certain lists of information from your printer, and how to cancel a job.

Tips for Successful Printing

Tips on Storing Print Media

Store your print media properly. For more information, see "Storing Print Media" on page 196.

Avoiding Paper Jams

📘 **NOTE:** It is recommended that you try a limited sample of any print media you are considering using with the printer before purchasing large quantities.

By selecting appropriate print media and loading it properly, you can avoid paper jams. See the following instructions on loading print media:

- "Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)" on page 202
- "Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)" on page 211
- "Avoiding Jams" on page 459

If you experience a jam, see "Jam" on page 492 for instructions.

Sending a Job to Print

Install the printer driver to use all the features of the printer. When you choose **Print** from a software program, a window representing the printer driver opens. Select the appropriate settings for the specific job you are sending to print. Print settings selected from the driver have precedence over the default menu settings selected from the operator panel or Tool Box.

You may need to click **Preferences** from the initial **Print** box to see all the available system settings you can change. If you are not familiar with a feature in the printer driver window, open the online Help for more information.

To print a job from a typical Windows® application:

1 Open the file you want to print.

2 From the **File** menu, select **Print**.

3 Verify that the correct printer is selected in the dialog box. Modify the system settings as needed (such as the pages you want to print or the number of copies).

4 To adjust system settings not available from the first screen, such as Quality, Paper Size, or Image Orientation, click **Preferences**.

The **Printing Preferences** dialog box appears.

5 Specify the print settings. For more information, click **Help**.

6 Click **OK** to close the **Printing Preferences** dialog box.

7 Click **Print** to send the job to the selected printer.

Canceling a Print Job

There are several methods for canceling a print job.

Canceling From the Operator Panel

To cancel a job after it has started printing:

1 Press the ✗ (**Cancel**) button.

> **NOTE:** Printing is canceled only for the current job. All the following jobs will continue to print.

Canceling a Job From the Computer Running Windows

Canceling a Job From the Taskbar

When you send a job to print, a small printer icon appears in the right corner of the taskbar.

1 Double-click the printer icon.

A list of print jobs appears in the printer window.

2 Select the job you want to cancel.

3 Press **Delete** on the keyboard.

Canceling a Job From the Desktop

1   Minimize all programs to reveal the desktop.

    Click **Start→ Printers and Faxes** (for Windows XP and 2003).

    Click **Start→ Devices and Printers** (for Windows 7 and Windows Server®
    2008 R2).

    Click **Start→ Control Panel→ Hardware and Sound→ Printers** (for
    Windows Vista®).

    Click **Start→ Control Panel→ Printers** (for Windows Server 2008).

    A list of available printers appears.

2   Double-click the printer you selected when you sent the job.

    A list of print jobs appears in the printer window.

3   Select the job you want to cancel.

4   Press **Delete** on the keyboard.

Direct Print Using the USB Storage Device

The Print From USB Memory feature allows you to print files stored in a USB
storage device by operating from the operator panel.

Supported File Formats

Files in the following file formats can be printed directly from a USB storage
device.

- PDF
- TIFF
- JPEG

To print a file in a USB storage device:

1   Insert a USB storage device to the USB port of the printer.

    `USB Memory` appears.

2   Ensure that `Print From` is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

    `Select Document` appears.

3 Press the ∨ button until the desired file is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

4 Select printing options as required.

> 📝 **NOTE:** You can print files scanned and stored using the Scan to USB Memory feature. Files saved without using the feature such as files created by user may not be printed properly.

Printing a Report Page

By using the Report/List menu, you can print a various of settings for your printer including printer settings, panel settings, job history, error history, color test page, protocol monitor, address book, and fax activity. This section describes two examples of printing from the Report/List menu.

Printing a System Settings Page

To verify detailed printer settings, print a printer settings page.

See "Understanding the Printer Menus" on page 359 or "Understanding the Tool Box Menus" on page 323 to identify the display and operator panel buttons if you need help.

The Operator Panel

1 Press the ▤ (**Menu**) button.

2 Press the ∨ button until System is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

3 Press the ∨ button until Report/List is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

4 Ensure that System Settings is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

The system settings page is printed.

5 Confirm the IP address next to **IP Address** under **Wired Network** on the system settings page.

If the IP address is 0.0.0.0, wait for a few minutes to resolve the IP address automatically, and then print the system settings page again.
If the IP address is not resolved automatically, see "Assigning an IP Address (for IPv4 Mode)" on page 53.

Printer Settings

Using the Tool Box to Change the Printer Settings

You can select menu items and corresponding values from the Tool Box.

✎ **NOTE:**

✎ **NOTE:** Factory defaults may vary for different countries.
These settings are active until new ones are selected or the factory defaults are restored.

To select a new value as a setting:

1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Dell Printers** → **Dell 1355 Multifunction Color Printer** → **Tool Box**.

> ✎ **NOTE:** The **Select Printer** dialog box opens in this step, when multiple printer drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of **Dell 1355 Multifunction Color Printer** listed in Printer Name, and then click **OK**.

The **Tool Box** opens.

2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.

3 Select the desired menu item.

Each menu item has a list of values for the menu item. A value can be:

- A phrase or word to describe a setting
- A numerical value that can be changed
- An On or Off setting

4 Select the desired value, and then click the associated button with each menu item.

Driver settings may have precedence over changes previously made and may require you to change the Tool Box defaults.

Adjusting the Language

To display a different language on the operator panel:

From the Printer Operator Panel

1 Press the ▤ (**Menu**) button.

2 Press the ∨ button until `System` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

3 Press the ∨ button until `Panel Language` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

4 Press the ∨ button until the desired language is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

From Your Computer

NOTE:

1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Dell Printers**→ **Dell 1355 Multifunction Color Printer** → **Tool Box**.

> **NOTE:** The Select Printer dialog box opens in this step, when multiple printer drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of Dell 1355 Multifunction Color Printer listed in Printer Name, and then click OK.

The **Tool Box** opens.

2 Click the **Printer Maintenance tab**.

3 Select **System Settings** from the list at the left side of the page.

The **System Settings** page is displayed.

4 Select the desired language from **Panel Language**, and then press the **Apply New Settings** button.

16

Copying

Loading Paper for Copying

The instructions for loading print documents are the same whether you are printing, faxing, or copying. For more details, see "Loading Print Media" on page 201.

Preparing a Document

You can use the document glass or the Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) to load an original document for copying, scanning and sending a fax. You can load up to 35 sheets of 75 g/m^2 (20 lb) documents for one job using the ADF or one sheet at a time using the document glass.

⚠ **CAUTION: Avoid loading documents that are smaller than 5.5 in. by 5.5 in. (139.7 mm by 139.7 mm) or larger than 8.5 in. by 14 in. (215.9 mm by 355.6 mm), different sizes or weights together, or booklets, pamphlets, transparencies, or documents having other unusual characteristics in ADF.**

⚠ **CAUTION: Carbon-paper or carbon-backed paper, coated paper, onion skin or thin paper, wrinkled or creased paper, curled or rolled paper or torn paper cannot be used in ADF.**

⚠ **CAUTION: Do not use the documents with staples, paper clips or exposed to adhesives or solvent based materials such as glue, ink and correcting fluid in ADF.**

✍ **NOTE:** To get the best scan quality, especially for color or gray scale images, use the document glass instead of the ADF.

Making Copies From the Document Glass

✍ **NOTE:** A computer connection is not required for copying.

✍ **NOTE:** Ensure that no document is in the ADF. If any document is detected in the ADF, it takes priority over the document on the document glass.

✍ **NOTE:** Contaminants on the document glass may cause black spots on the copy printout. For best results, clean the document glass before use. For more information, see "Cleaning the Scanner" on page 454.

To make a copy from the document glass:
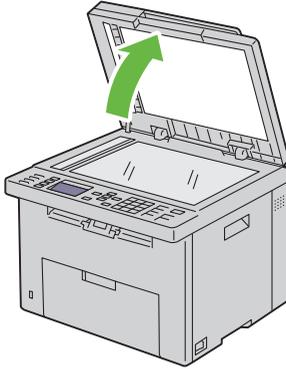
1 Open the document cover.

2 Place the document face down on the document glass and align it with the registration guide on the top left corner of the glass.
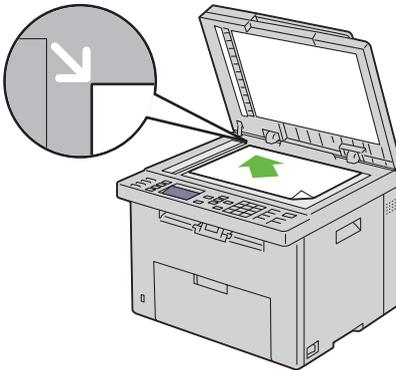
3 Close the document cover.

> ✍ **NOTE:** Leaving the document cover open while copying may affect the copy quality and increase the toner consumption.

> ✍ **NOTE:** If you are copying a page from a book or magazine, lift the document cover until its hinges are caught by the stopper and then close the cover. If the book or magazine is thicker than 30 mm, start copying with the cover open.

4 Customize the copy settings including the number of copies, copy size, the contrast, and the image quality. For more information, see "Setting Copy Options" on page 238.

To clear the settings, use the **AC (All Clear)** button.

5 Press the ▷ **(Start)** button to begin copying.

📝 **NOTE:** Press the ✖ **(Cancel)** button to cancel a copy job at any time while scanning a document.

Making Copies From the ADF

⊘ **NOTICE:** Do not load more than 35 sheets into the ADF or allow more than 35 sheets to be fed to the ADF output tray. The ADF output tray should be emptied before it exceeds 35 sheets or your original documents may be damaged.

📝 **NOTE:** To get the best scan quality, especially for gray scale images, use the document glass instead of the ADF.

📝 **NOTE:** A computer connection is not required for copying.

1 Load up to 35 sheets of 75 g/m^2 (20 lb) documents face up on the ADF with top edge of the documents in first. Then adjust the document guides to the correct document size.
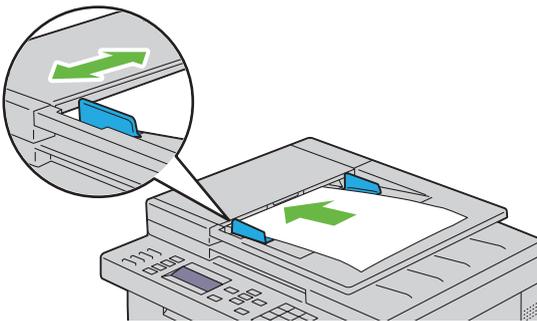
📝 **NOTE:** Ensure that you use the document guides before copying a legal-size document.

2 Customize the copy settings including the number of copies, copy size, contrast, and image quality. For more information, see "Setting Copy Options" on page 238.

To clear the settings, use the **AC (All Clear)** button.

3 Press the ▶ **(Start)** button to begin copying.

📝 **NOTE:** Press the ✖ **(Cancel)** button to cancel a copy job at any time while scanning a document.

Setting Copy Options

Set the following options for the current copy job before pressing the ▶ **(Start)** button to make copies.

📝 **NOTE:** The copy options automatically return to their default status after copying.

Number of Copies

To specify the number of copies from 1 to 99.

1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 296.

2 Press the ✎ **(Copy)** button.

3 Enter the number of copies using the numeric keypad to select the desired value.

4 Press the ▶ **(Start)** button to begin copying.

Color

To select mode for color or black and white copying.

1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 296.

2 Press the ⬙ **(Copy)** button.

3 Press the ⬤ **|** ⬤ **(Color Mode)** button to select the desired color mode.

4 Press the ▷ **(Start)** button to begin copying.

Collated

To sort the copy output: For example, if you make two copies of three page documents, one complete three page document will print followed by the second complete document.

📝 **NOTE:** Copying documents with a large amount of data may exhaust available memory.
If a memory shortage occurs, cancel the collating by turning Collated to Uncollated on the operator panel.
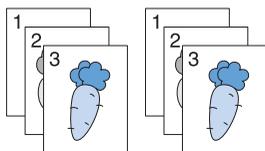
1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

2 Press the ⬙ **(Copy)** button.

3 Ensure that Collated is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

4 Press the ⋁ button to select the desired setting, and then press the ✓ button.

📝 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Uncollated*	Does not sort the copy job
Collated	Sorts the copy job

Auto	Automatically determines which output mode for the copy job

5 If necessary, customize the copy settings including the number of copies, contrast, and image quality. See "Setting Copy Options" on page 238.

6 Press the ▷ (**Start**) button to begin copying.

Reduce/Enlarge

To reduce or enlarge the size of a copied image, from 25 percent to 400 percent when you copy original documents from the document glass or ADF.

📝 **NOTE:** When you make a reduced copy, black lines may appear at the bottom of your copy.

📝 **NOTE:** This item is available only when Multiple-Up is set to Off or Manual.

1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.

   OR

   Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

   For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 296.

2 Press the ◆ (**Copy**) button.

3 Press the ∨ button until Reduce/Enlarge is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

4 Press the ∨ button to select the desired settings, and then press the ✔ button.

   ### mm series

   📝 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

200%
A5→A4 (141%)
A5→B5 (122%)
100%*

B5→A5 (81%)
A4→A5 (70%)
50%

inch series

200%
Stmt→Lgl (154%)
Stmt→Ltr (129%)
100%[*]
Lgl→Ltr (78%)
Ldgr→Ltr (64%)
50%

NOTE: This item is available only when `Multiple-Up` is set to `Off` or `Manual`.

NOTE: You can also use the numeric keypad to input the desired zoom ratio from 25% to 400%, or press the ❯ button to enlarge the zoom ratio or press the ❮ button to reduce the zoom ratio in 1% intervals.

5 Press the ▶ (**Start**) button to begin copying.

Document Size

To specify the default document size:

1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 296.

2 Press the ◈ (**Copy**) button.

3 Press the ∨ button until `Document Size` is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

4 Press the ∨ button to select the desired settings, and then press the ✔ button.

📝 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

A4 (210 x 297 mm)[*1]
A5 (148 x 210 mm)
B5 (182 x 257 mm)
Letter (8.5 x 11")[*1]
Folio (8.5 x 13")
Legal (8.5 x 14")
Executive (7.25 x 10.5")

    [*1] The default for Document Size varies depending on country specific factory default.

5 Press the ▶ **(Start)** button to begin copying.

Original Type

To select the copy image quality.

1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 296.

2 Press the ⬙ **(Copy)** button.

3 Press the ∨ button until Original Type is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

4 Press the ∨ button to select the desired settings, and then press the ✔ button.

📝 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Text	Suitable for documents with text.
Text & Photo*	Used for documents with both text and photos.
Photo	Suitable for documents with photos.

5 Press the ▷ **(Start)** button to begin copying.

Lighter/Darker

To adjust the contrast to make the copy lighter or darker than the original.

1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 296.

2 Press the ◈ **(Copy)** button.

3 Press the ∨ button until Lighter/Darker is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

4 Press the ≻ or ≺ button to select the desired settings, and then press the ✓ button.

📖 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Lighter2	Makes the copy lighter than the original. Works well with dark print.
Lighter1	
Normal*	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
Darker1	Makes the copy darker than the original. Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
Darker2	

5 Press the ▷ **(Start)** button to begin copying.

Sharpness

To adjust the sharpness to make the copy sharper or softer than the original.

1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 296.

2 Press the ✥ (**Copy**) button.

3 Press the ∨ button until `Sharpness` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

4 Press the ∨ button to select the desired settings, and then press the ✓ button.

✐ NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Sharpest	Makes the copy sharper than the original.
Sharper	
Normal*	Does not make the copy sharper or softer than the original.
Softer	Makes the copy softer than the original.
Softest	

5 Press the ▶ (**Start**) button to begin copying.

Auto Exposure

To suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.

1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 296.

2 Press the ⬙ (**Copy**) button.

3 Press the ⌄ button until `Auto Exposure` is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

4 Press the ⌄ button until `On` is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

5 Press the ▷ (**Start**) button to begin copying.

Multiple-Up

To print two original images to fit onto one sheet of paper.
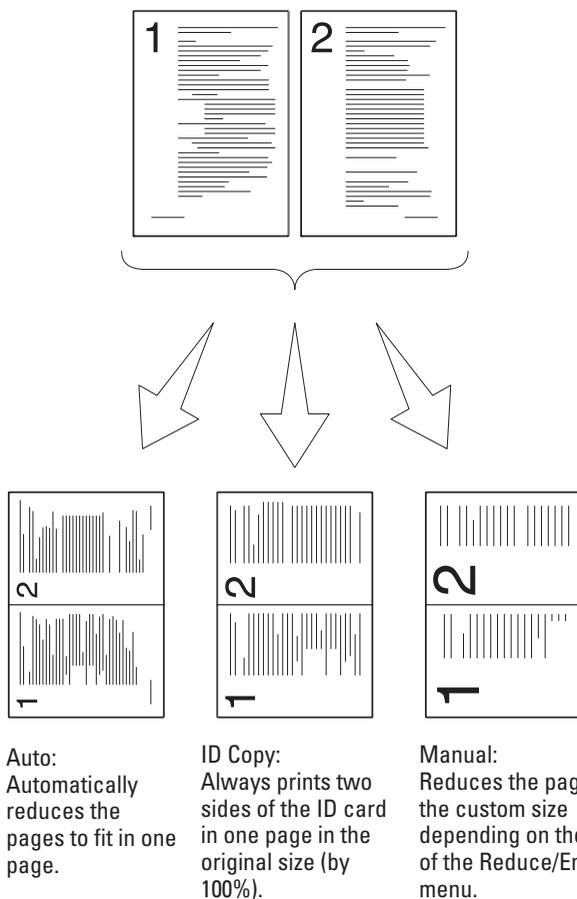
Auto:
Automatically reduces the pages to fit in one page.

ID Copy:
Always prints two sides of the ID card in one page in the original size (by 100%).

Manual:
Reduces the pages in the custom size depending on the setting of the Reduce/Enlarge menu.

1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 296.

2 Press the ◈ (**Copy**) button.

3 Press the ⌄ button until `Multiple-Up` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

4 Press the ⌄ button to select the desired setting, and then press the ✓ button.

📖 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk ([*]) are the factory default menu settings.

Off*	Does not perform multiple-up printing.
Auto	Automatically reduces the original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.
ID Copy	Prints the original pages onto one sheet of paper in the original size.
Manual	Prints the original pages onto the one sheet of paper in the size specified in `Reduce/Enlarge`.

5 If necessary, customize the copy settings including the number of copies, contrast, and image quality. See "Setting Copy Options" on page 238.

6 Press the ▷ (**Start**) button to begin copying.

When you are using the document glass and `Multiple-Up` is set to `Auto`, `ID Copy`, or `Manual`, the display prompts you for another page. Press the ▷ button to select `Yes` or `No`, and then press the ✓ button.

7 If you select `Yes`, press the ▷ button to select `Continue` or `Cancel`, and then press the ✓ button.

Margin Top/Bottom

To specify the top and bottom margins of the copy.

1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 296.

2 Press the ⬙ (**Copy**) button.

3 Press the ⋁ button until `Margin Top/Bottom` is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

4 Press the ⋁ or ⋀ button or enter the desired value using the numeric keypad, and then press the ✔ button.

📝 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

4 mm*/0.2 inch*	Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.
0-50 mm/0.0-2.0 inch	

5 Press the ▷ (**Start**) button to begin copying.

Margin Left/Right

To specify the left and right margins of the copy.

1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 296.

2 Press the ⬙ (**Copy**) button.

3 Press the ⋁ button until `Margin Left/Right` is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

4 Press the ⋁ or ⋀ button or enter the desired value using the numeric keypad, and then press the ✔ button.

📝 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

4 mm*/0.2 inch*	Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.
0-50 mm/0.0-2.0 inch	

5 Press the ▷ (**Start**) button to begin copying.

Margin Middle

To specify the middle margin of the copy.

1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 296.

2 Press the ✦ (**Copy**) button.

3 Press the ⋁ button until Margin Middle is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

4 Press the ⋁ or ⋀ button or enter the desired value using the numeric keypad, and then press the ✔ button.

📝 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk ([*]) are the factory default menu settings.

0 mm*/ 0.0 inch*	Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.
0-50 mm/ 0.0-2.0 inch	

5 Press the ▷ (**Start**) button to begin copying.

Changing the Default Settings

The COPY menu options, including contrast, and image quality can be set to the most frequently used modes. When you copy a document, the default settings are used unless they are changed by using the corresponding buttons on the operator panel.

NOTE: While you set copy options, pressing the **AC (All Clear)** button cancels the changed settings and returns to the default status.

To create your own default settings:

1 Press the ☰ (**Menu**) button.

2 Press the ∨ button until `System` is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

3 Ensure that `Defaults Settings` is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

4 Ensure that `Copy Defaults` is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

5 Press the ∨ button until the desired menu item is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

6 Press the ❯ or ∨ button until the desired setting is highlighted or enter the value using the numeric keypad, and then press the ✔ button.

7 Repeat steps 5 and 6, as needed.

8 To return to the previous screen, press the ↩ (**Back**) button.

Setting the Power Saver Timer Option

You can set the power saver timer for the printer. The printer waits before it restores the default copy settings, if you do not start copying after changing them on the operator panel.

1 Press the ☰ (**Menu**) button.

2 Press the ∨ button until `System` is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

3 Press the ∨ button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

4 Press the ∨ button until `System Settings` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

5 Ensure that `Power Saver Timer` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

6 Press the ∨ button to select `Mode 1` or `Mode 2`, and then press the ✓ button.

7 Press the ∨ or ∧ button or enter the desired value using the numeric keypad, and then press the ✓ button.

You can select from 5–30 minutes for `Mode 1` or 1–6 minutes for `Mode 2`.

8 To return to the previous screen, press the ↰ (**Back**) button.

17

Scanning

Scanning Overview

You can use your Dell™ 1355cn/1355cnw Multifunction Color Printer to turn pictures and text into editable images on your computer.

PaperPort® is a program that enables you to organize, find and share all your paper and digital documents, and is supplied with your printer.

The resolution setting to use when you scan an item depends on the item type and how you plan to use the image or document after you scan it in to your computer. For the best results, use these recommended settings.

Type	Resolution
Documents	300 dpi black-and-white or 200 dpi grayscale or color
Documents of poor quality or that contain small text	400 dpi black-and-white or 300 dpi grayscale
Photographs and pictures	100–200 dpi color or 200 dpi grayscale
Images for an inkjet printer	150–300 dpi
Images for a high-resolution printer	300–600 dpi

Scanning beyond these recommended resolutions may exceed the capabilities of the application. If you require a resolution above those recommended in the above table, you should reduce the size of the image by previewing (or pre-scan) and cropping before scanning the image.

✍ **NOTE:** You can use PaperPort's built-in Optical Character Recognition (OCR) software to copy text from scanned documents so that you can use and edit the text in any text editing, word processing, or spreadsheet program. The OCR process requires textual images scanned at 150–600 dpi and 300 dpi or 600 dpi is recommended for graphics.

If you prefer to use another application, such as Adobe® Photoshop®, you must assign the application to the printer by selecting it from the list of available applications through the Select Software button each time you start scanning. If you do not assign an application to the Select Software button, PaperPort is automatically selected when you start scanning.

ScanDirect is a PaperPort application that enables you to scan items and send them directly to PaperPort or other programs on your computer without first running PaperPort. ScanDirect runs as a separate application from the Windows **start** menu and displays the ScanDirect bar. For more information about using ScanDirect, refer to the PaperPort's Help menu.

Icons on the ScanDirect bar represent the programs that are limited to PaperPort and to ScanDirect. To scan and send an item to a program, click the program icon and then scan the item. ScanDirect automatically starts the selected program when the scan is complete.

Scanning From the Operator Panel

NOTE: Ensure that the printer is connected to the computer using the USB cable.

1   Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.

    OR

    Place a single document face down on the document glass.

    For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 296.

2   Press the ⤳ (**Scan**) button.

3   Press the ⋁ button until Scan to Application is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

4   Configure the scanning settings as necessary.

5   Press the ▷ (**Start**) button.

    The selected application window opens on your computer.

> ![note] **NOTE:** If the following dialog box appears on your computer, select **1355cn/1355cnw MFP Scan Button Manager**, and then click **OK**.
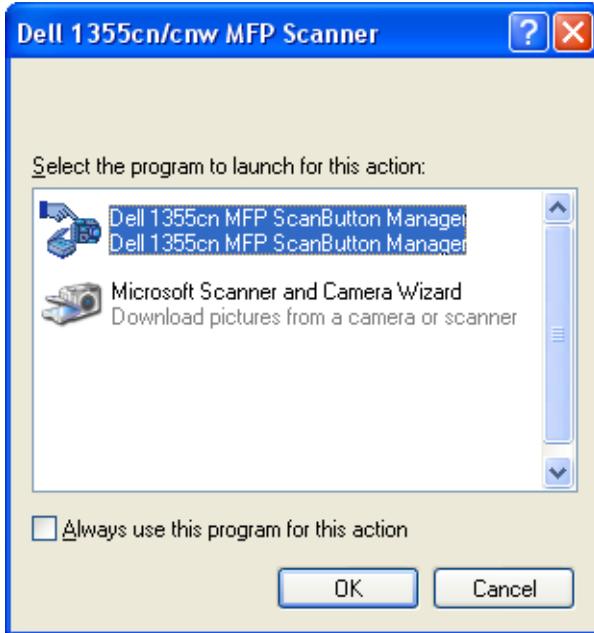
> ![note] **NOTE:** Once you check the **Always use this program for this action** check box when selecting **1355cn/1355cnw MFP Scan Button Manager**, the selected application is automatically used without displaying the program selection window.

> ![note] **NOTE:** You must use ScanButton Manager on your computer to change the settings for scanning. For details, see "Quick Launch Utility" on page 410.

Scanning Using the TWAIN Driver

Your printer supports the Tool Without An Interesting Name (TWAIN) driver for scanning images. TWAIN is one of the standard components provided by Microsoft® Windows XP, Windows Server® 2003, Windows Server 2008, Windows Vista®, and Windows 7, and works with various scanners.

> ![note] **NOTE:** Ensure that the printer is connected to the computer using the USB cable.

To scan an image from the **PaperPort**:

1. Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.

   OR

   Place a single document face down on the document glass.

   For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 296.

2. On the Windows **Start** menu, click **Nuance PaperPort 12** from **All Programs**, and then click **PaperPort**.

3. Click **Select**, then select **TWAIN: Dell 1355cn/cnw MFP Scanner**, and then click **OK**.

4. Select your scanning preferences and click **Preview** to display the preview image.

   ![NOTE icon] **NOTE:** The illustration may vary for different operating systems.
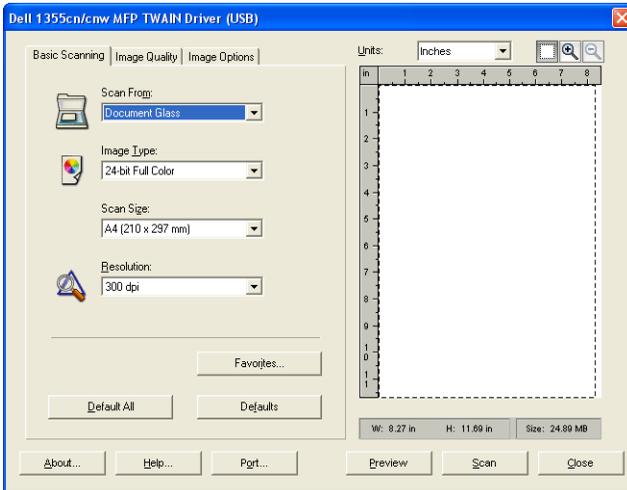
5. Select the desired properties from the **Image Quality** and **Image Options** tabs.

6. Click **Scan** to start scanning.

7. Follow the on-screen instructions to edit the picture after it is copied to your computer.

Scanning Using the Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) Driver

Your printer also supports the WIA driver for scanning images. WIA is one of the standard components provided by Microsoft Windows XP and later operating systems and works with digital cameras and scanners. Unlike the TWAIN driver, the WIA driver allows you to scan an image and easily manipulate those images without using additional software.

> **NOTE:** Ensure that the printer is connected to the computer using the USB cable.

1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document face down on the document glass.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 296.

2 Start the drawing software, such as **Paint** for Windows.

> **NOTE:** When you use Windows Vista or Windows Server 2008, use **Windows Photo Gallery** instead of **Paint**.

3 Click **File**→ **From Scanner or Camera** (**Paint** button→ **From scanner or camera** for Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7).

The **Scan using Dell 1355cn/1355cnw MFP Scanner** window appears.

> **NOTE:** The illustration may vary for different operating systems.
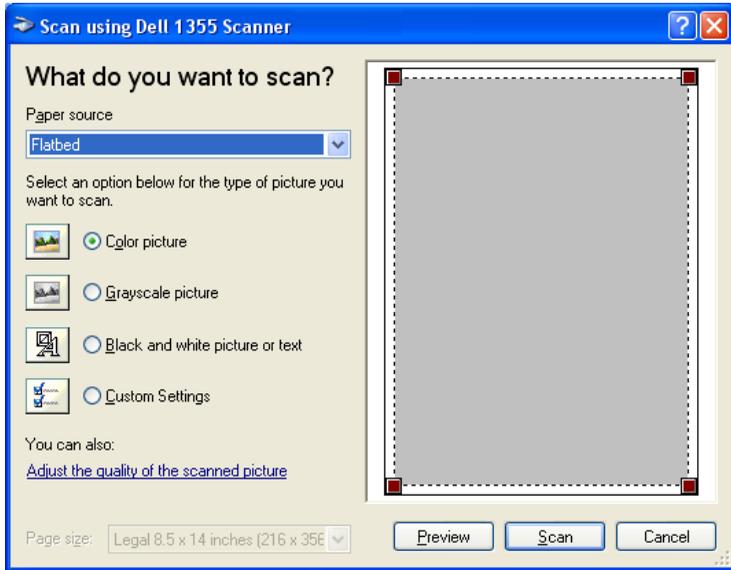
4   Select your scanning preferences and click **Adjust the quality of the scanned picture** to display the **Advanced Properties** dialog box.

5   Select the desired properties including brightness and contrast, and then click **OK**.

6   Click **Scan** to start scanning.

7   Click **Save As** from the **File** menu.

8   Enter a picture name, and select a file format and destination to save the picture.

Using a Scanner on the Network

Overview

The Scan to Server/Computer feature allows you to scan documents and send the scanned document to a network computer via the FTP or SMB protocol.
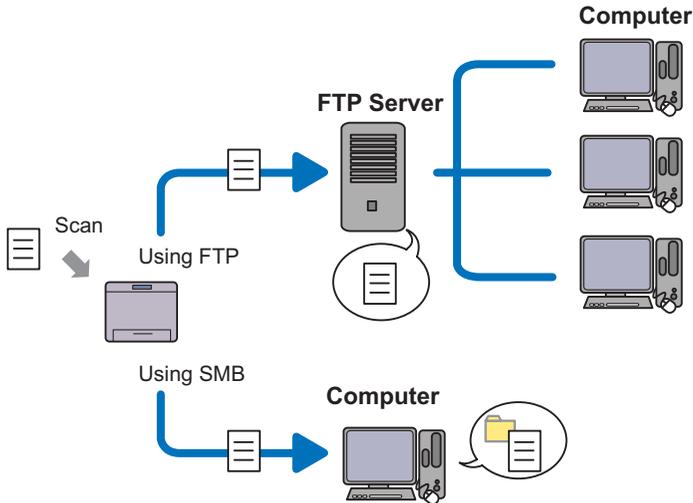
You can select the kind of the server and specify a destination to store the scanned document with the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool or Address Book Editor.

The following items are required to use the Scan to Server/Computer feature.

- Using SMB

  To transfer data via SMB, your computer must run on one of the following operating systems that includes folder sharing.

  For Mac OS X, a shared user account is required on the Mac OS X.

  - Microsoft Windows Server 2003
  - Microsoft Windows Server 2008
  - Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2
  - Microsoft Windows XP

- Microsoft Windows Vista
- Microsoft Windows 7
- Mac OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6
- Using FTP

  To transfer data via FTP, one of the following FTP servers and an account to the FTP server (login name and password) are required.

  - Microsoft Windows Server 2003, Microsoft Windows Server 2008, Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2, Microsoft Windows Vista, or Microsoft Windows 7

    FTP service of Microsoft Internet Information Services 6.0

  - Microsoft Windows XP

    FTP service of Microsoft Internet Information Server 3.0/4.0 or Internet Information Services 5.0/5.1

  - Mac OS X

    FTP service of Mac OS X 10.4.2/10.4.4/10.4.8/10.4.9/10.4.10/10.4.11/10.5/10.6

  For information on how to configure the FTP service, contact your system administrator.

Follow the procedure below to use the Scan to Server/Computer feature.

"Confirming a Login name and Password" on page 261

"Specifying a Destination to Store the Document" on page 262

"Configuring the Printer Settings" on page 271

Confirming a Login name and Password

When using SMB:

The Scan to Computer/Server feature requires a user login account with a valid and non-empty password for authentication. Confirm a login user name and password.

If you do not use a password for your user login, you need to create a password on your User Login Account with the following procedure.

For Microsoft Windows XP:

1 Click **start** → **Control Panel** → **User Accounts**.

2 Click **Change an account**.

3 Select your account.

4 Click **Create a password** and add in a password for your user login account.

For Windows Vista and Windows 7:

1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel**.

2 Click **User Accounts and Family Safety**.

3 Click **User Accounts**.

4 Click **Create a password for your account** and add in a password for your user login account.

For Windows Server 2008:

1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel**.

2 Double-click **User Accounts**.

3 Click **Create a password for your account** and add in a password for your user login account.

For Windows Server 2008 R2:

1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel**.

2 Select **User Accounts**.

3 Click **User Accounts**.

4 Click **Create a password for your account** and add in a password for your user login account.

For Mac OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6

1 Click **System Preferences** → **Accounts**.

2 Select **Change Password**.

3 Enter a password for your user login account in **New password**.

4 Re-enter the password in **Verify**.

After you confirmed a login user name and password, go to "Specifying a Destination to Store the Document" on page 262.

When using FTP

The Scan to Computer/Server feature requires a user name and a password. For your user name and password, contact your system administrator.

Specifying a Destination to Store the Document

When using SMB

Share a folder to store the scanned document using the following procedure.

For Windows XP Home Edition:

1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, `MyShare`).

2 Right-click on the folder, and then select **Properties**.

3 Click on the **Sharing** tab, and then select **Share this folder on the network**.

4 Enter a shared name in the **Share name** box.

> 📝 **NOTE:** Write down this shared name because you will use this name in the next setting procedure.
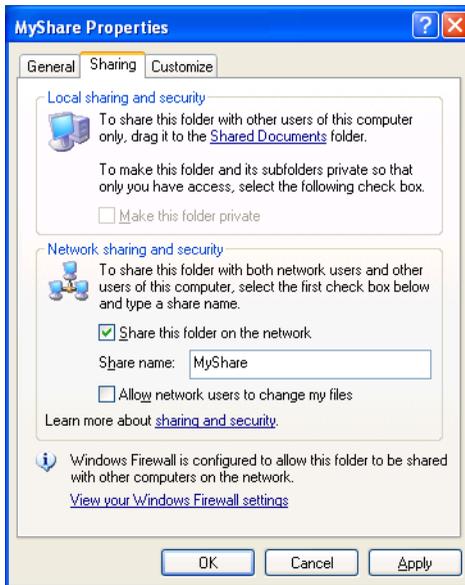
> 📝 **NOTE:** When the following screen appears, click **If you understand the security risks but want to share files without running the wizard, click here**, then select **Just enable file sharing**, and then click **OK**.
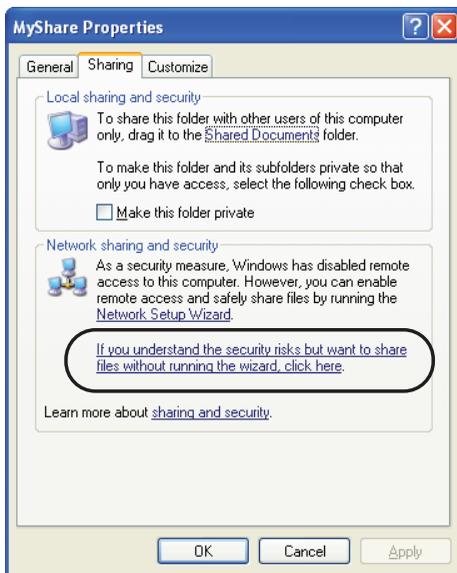
5 Select **Allow network users to change my files**.

6 Click **OK**.

> 📝 **NOTE:** To add sub-folders, create new folders in the shared folder you have created.
> Example: Folder name, `MyShare`, Second-level folder name: `MyPic`,
> Third-level folder name: `John`
> You should now see `MyShare\MyPic\John` in your directory

After you created a folder, go to "Configuring the Printer Settings" on page 271.

For Microsoft Windows XP Professional Edition:

1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, `MyShare`) and double-click the folder.

2 Select **Folder Options** from **Tools**.
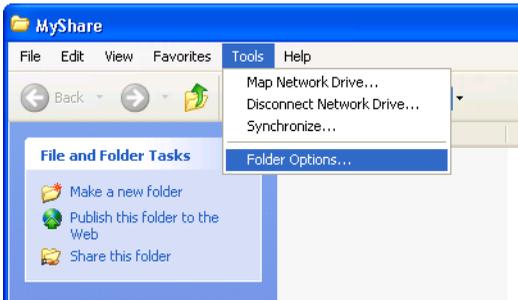
3 Click **View** tab, and then clear the checkbox of **Use simple file sharing (Recommended)**.
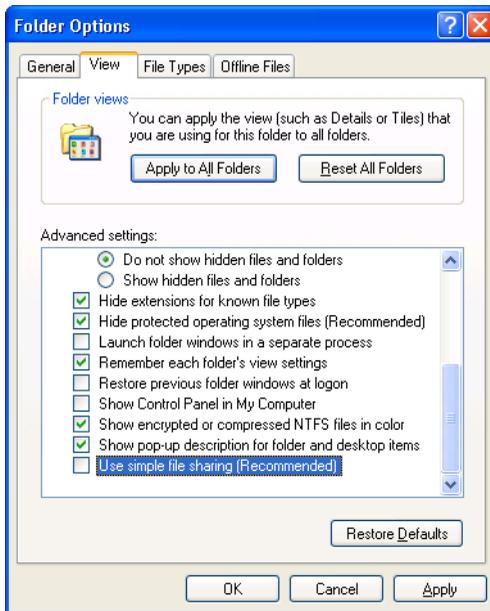
4 Click **OK**, and then close the window.

5 Right-click the folder, and then select **Properties**.

6 Select the **Sharing** tab, and then select **Share this folder**.

7 Enter a shared name in the **Share name** box.

    📝 **NOTE:** Write down this shared name because you will use this name in the next setting procedure.
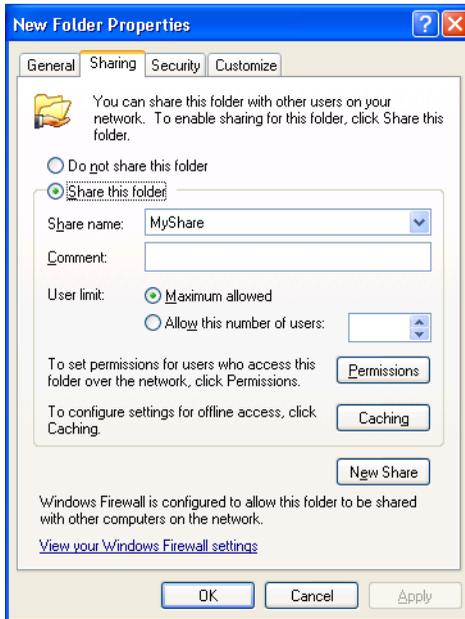
8 Click on **Permissions** to create a write permission for this folder.

9 Click **Add**.

10 Search user login name by clicking **Advanced**, or enter the user login name in the **Enter the object names to select** box and click **Check Names** to confirm (Example of user login name, MySelf).
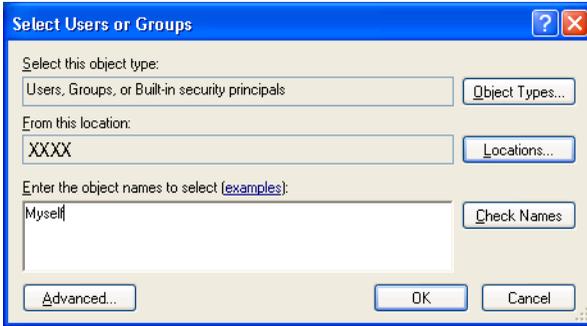
11 Click **OK**.

> 📝 **NOTE:** Do not use **Everyone** as the user login name.

12 Click the user login name that you have just entered. Select the **Full Control** check box. This will grant you permission to send the document into this folder.
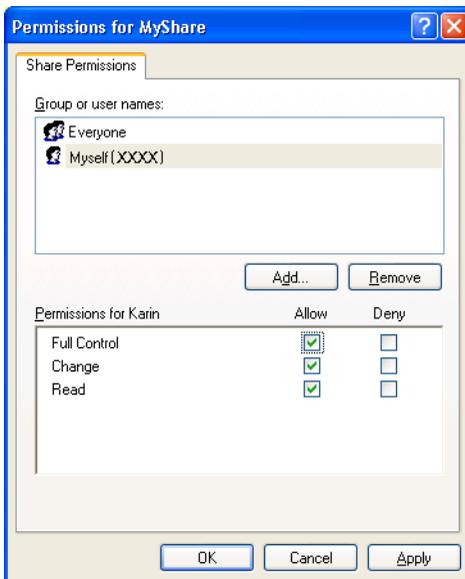
13 Click **OK**.

> ✐ **NOTE:** To add sub-folders, create new folders in the shared folder you have created.
> Example: Folder name: `MyShare`, Second-level folder name: `MyPic`,
> Third-level folder name: `John`
> You should now see `MyShare\MyPic\John` in your directory.

After you created a folder, go to "Configuring the Printer Settings" on page 271.

For Microsoft Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2

1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, `MyShare`).

2 Right-click the folder, and then select **Properties**.
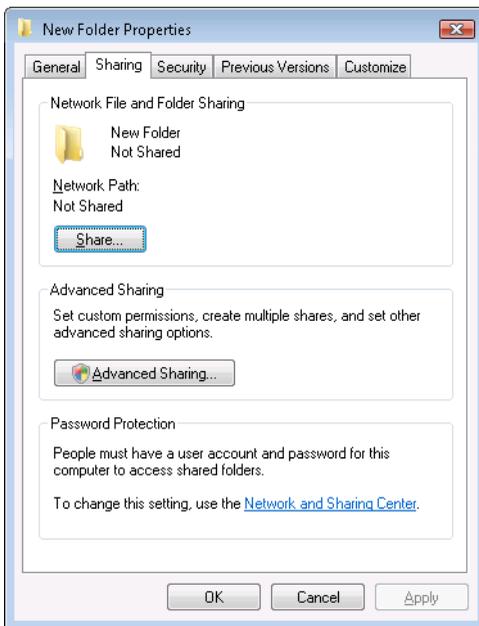
3 Click the **Sharing** tab, and then select **Advanced Sharing**.

4 Select the **Share this folder** check box.

5 Enter a shared name in the **Share name** box.

📝 **NOTE:** Note down the shared name as you need to use this name in the next setting procedure.
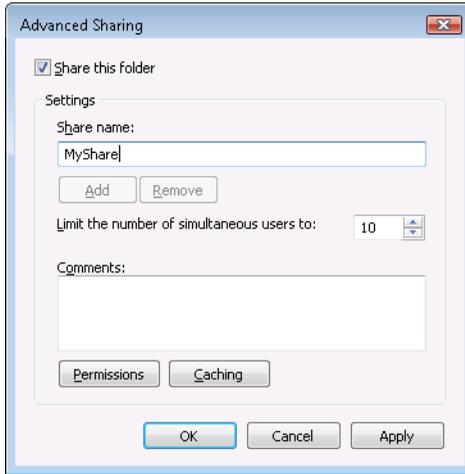
6 Click **Permissions** to give write permission for this folder.

7 Click **Add**.

8 Search user login name by clicking **Advanced**, or enter the user login name in the **Enter the object names to select** box and click **Check Names** to confirm (Example of user login name, `MySelf`).
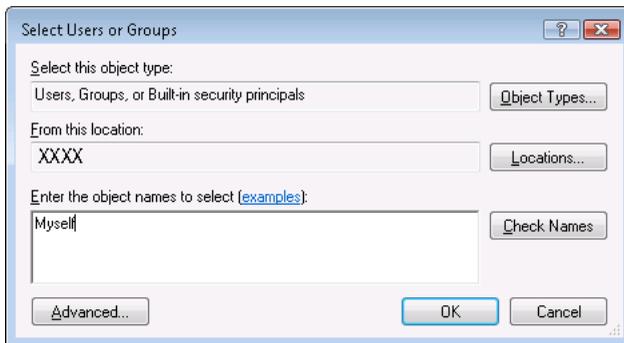
9 Click **OK** when you are done.

10 Click the user login name that you have just entered. Select the **Full Control** check box. This will grant you permission to send the document to this folder.

📝 **NOTE:** Do not use **Everyone** as the user login name.
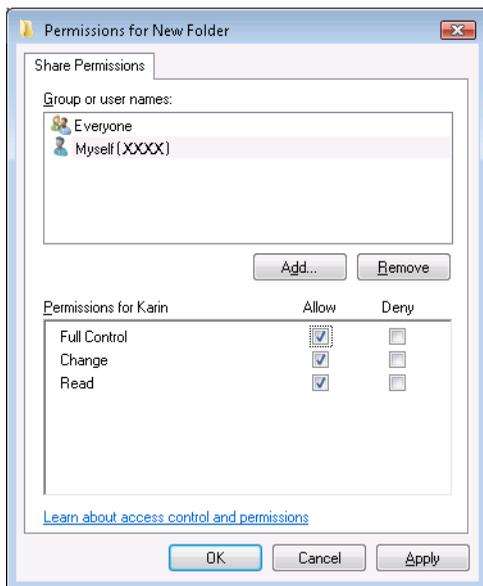
11 Click **OK**.

📝 **NOTE:** To add sub-folders, create new folders in the shared folder you have created.
Example: Folder name: `MyShare`, Second-level folder name: `MyPic`,
Third-level folder name: `John`
You should now see `MyShare\MyPic\John` in your directory.

After you created a folder, go to "Configuring the Printer Settings" on page 271.

For Mac OS X 10.4:

1 Select **Go** from the **Finder** menu, and then click **Home**.

2 Double-click **Public**.

3 Create a folder (Example of folder name, `MyShare`).

> 📝 **NOTE:** Note down the folder name as you need to use this name in the next setting procedure.

4 Open **System Preferences**, and then click **Sharing**.

5 Check the **File Sharing** check box and the **Windows Sharing** check box.

For Mac OS X 10.5/10.6:

1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, `MyShare`).

> 📝 **NOTE:** Note down the folder name as you need to use this name in the next setting procedure.

2 Select the created folder, and then select **Get Info** from the **File** menu.

3 Check the **Shared folder** check box, and then close the window.

4 Open **System Preferences**, and then click **Sharing**.

5 Check the **File Sharing** check box, and then click **Options**.

6 Check the **Share Files and folders using SMB** check box and your account name.

7 Click **Done**.

When Using FTP

For a destination to store the document, contact your system administrator.

Configuring the Printer Settings

You can configure the printer settings to use the Scan to Server/Computer feature with the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool or Address Book Editor.

From the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

1 Open a web browser.

2 Type in the IP address of the printer in the address bar.

> 📝 **NOTE:** For details on how to check the IP address of the printer, see "Verifying the IP Settings" on page 56.

3 Click **Go**.

The printer's web page appears.

4 Click **Address Book** if a security login dialog box appears, type in the correct user name and password.

   ☑ **NOTE:** The default user name is admin, and the default password is left blank (NULL).
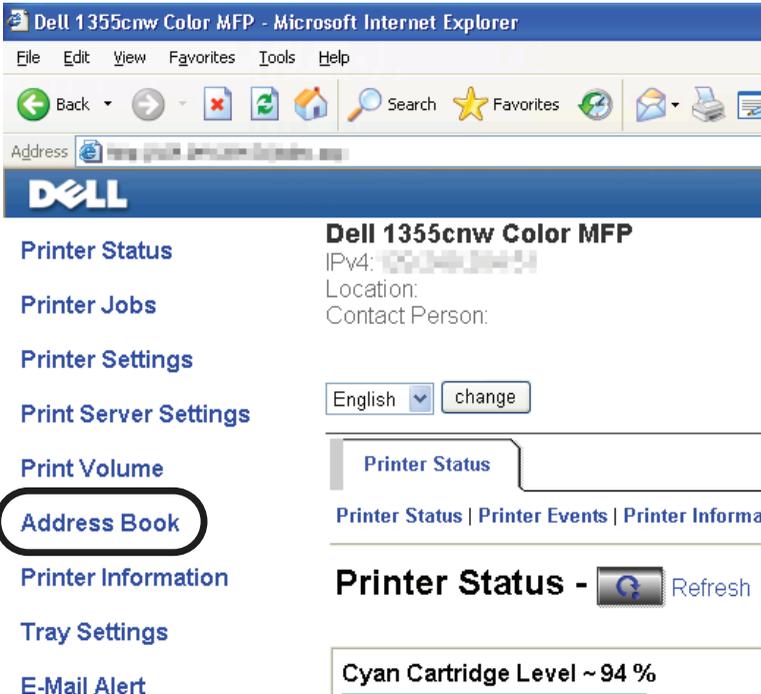
5 Click the **Server Address** tab.

6 Select any unused number and click **Create**.
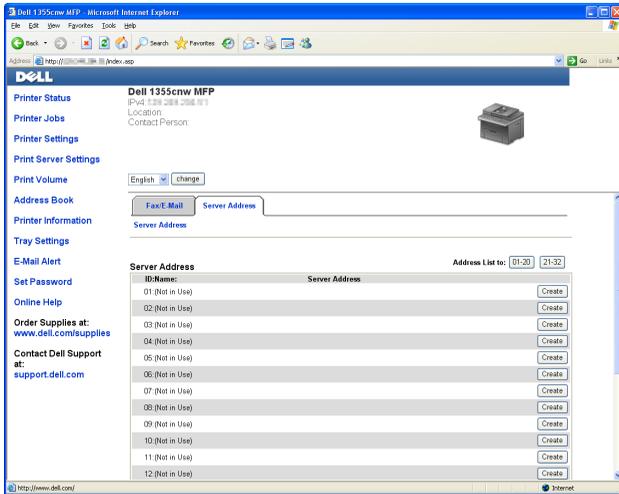
The **Server Address** page appears.

To fill in the fields, enter the information as follows:

1	**Name**	Enter a friendly name that you want it to appear on the Server address book.
2	**Server Type**	Select **SMB** if you store the document in a shared folder of your computer.
		Select **FTP** if you use a FTP server.
3	**Server Address**	Enter a server name or IP address of your computer or the FTP server that you have shared out.
		The following are examples:
		• For **FTP**:
		Server name: myhost.example.com
		(myhost: host name, example.com: domain name)
		IP address: 192.168.1.100
		• For **SMB**:
		Server name: myhost
		IP address: 192.168.1.100
4	**Share Name**	For SMB only.
		On the Windows operating system, enter the share name of the folder to store the scanned document on the recipient computer.
		On the Mac OS, enter the folder name to store the scanned document on the recipient computer.

5	Server Path	For SMB
		To store the scanned document in the share folder directly without creating any subfolder, leave the space blank.
		To store the scanned document in the folder you created under the share folder, enter the path as following.
		Example: Share Folder name, MyShare, Second-level folder name: MyPic, Third-level folder name: John
		You should now see `MyShare\Mypic\John` in your directory.
		In this case, enter the following item.
		Server Path: `\MyPic\John`
		For FTP
		Enter the server path to store the scanned document.
6	Server Port Number	Enter the Server Port Number. If you are unsure, you can enter the default value of 139 for SMB and 21 for FTP.
7	Login Name	Enter the user account name that has access to the shared folder on your computer or FTP server.
8	Login Password	Enter the password corresponding to the above login name.
		NOTE: Empty password is not valid in the Scan to Computer feature. Ensure that you have a valid password for the user login account. (See "Confirming a Login name and Password" on page 261 for details on how to add a password in your user login account.)
9	Re-enter Password	Re-enter your password.

After you configured settings, go to "Sending the Scanned File on the Network" on page 279.

From the Address Book Editor

1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Dell Printers** → **Dell 1355 Multifunction Color Printer** → **Address Book Editor**.

The **Select Device** window appears.

2 Select your printer from the list.

3 Click **OK**.

4 Click **Tool** → **New (Printer Address Book)** → **Server**.
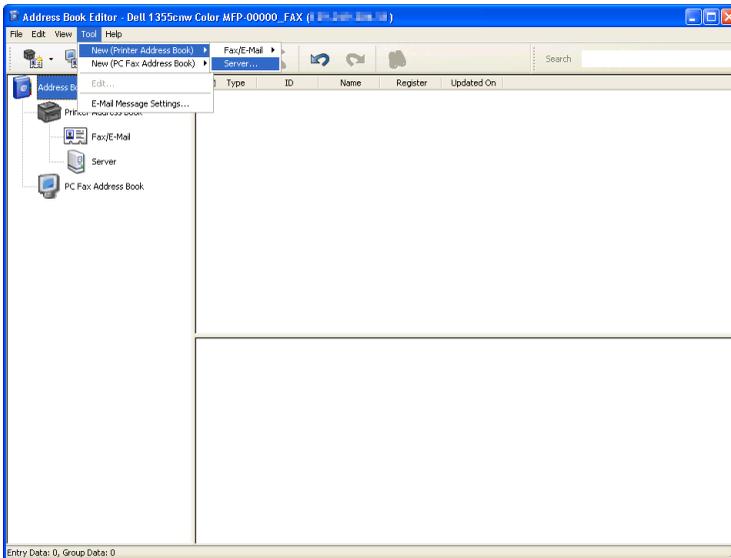
The **Server Address** dialog box appears.

To fill in the fields, enter the information as follows:

1	**Name**	Enter a friendly name that you want it to appear on the Server address book.
2	**Server Type**	Select **Computer (SMB)** if you store the document in a shared folder of your computer.
		Select **Server (FTP)** if you use a FTP server.
3	**Computer Settings wizard**	Clicking this button opens the wizard screen which guides you through several steps.
		When you complete the steps in the wizard, the items 4 to 10 are entered automatically. For details, click the **Help** button.

4	**Sever Name/ IP Address**	Enter a server name or IP address of your computer or the FTP server that you have shared out.
		The following are examples:
		• For **Computer (SMB)**:
		Server name: myhost
		IP address: 192.168.1.100
		• For **Server (FTP)**:
		Server name: myhost.example.com
		(myhost: host name, example.com: domain name)
		IP address: 192.168.1.100
5	**Share Name**	Enter the name of the shared folder on the recipient computer. For SMB only.
6	**Path**	For SMB
		To store the scanned document in the share folder directly without creating any subfolder, leave the space blank.
		To store the scanned document in the folder you created under the share folder, enter the path as following.
		Example: Share Folder name, MyShare, Second-level folder name: MyPic, Third-level folder name: John
		You should now see `MyShare\MyPic\John` in your directory.

MyShare (Share folder)

└ MyPic

└ John

In this case, enter the following item.

      Path: `\MyPic\John`

For FTP

Enter the path to store the scanned document.

7	**Login Name**	Enter the user account name that has access to the shared folder on your computer or FTP server.

8	**Login Password**	Enter the password corresponding to the above login name.
		NOTE: NOTE: Empty password is not valid in the Scan to Server/Computer feature. Ensure that you have a valid password for the user login account. (See "Confirming a Login name and Password" on page 261 for details on how to add a password in your user login account).
9	**Confirm Login Password**	Re-enter your password.
10	**Port Number**	Enter the Server Port Number. If you are unsure, you can enter the default value of 139 for SMB and 21 for FTP.

After you configured settings, go to "Sending the Scanned File on the Network" on page 279.

Sending the Scanned File on the Network

1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document face down on the document glass.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 296.

2 Press the ⬙ (**Scan**) button.

3 Press the ▼ button until `Scan to Network` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

4 Ensure that `Scan to` is highlighted, press the ✓ button.

5 Press the ▼ button to select `Network (Computer)` or `Network (Server)`, or `Search Address book`, and then press the ✓ button.

`Network (Computer)`: Stores the scanned image on the computer by using the SMB protocol.

`Network (Server)`: Stores the scanned image on the server by using the FTP protocol.

`Search Address Book`: Select the server address registered in Address Book.

6 Press the ∨ button to select the destination to store the scanned file in, and then press the ✓ button.

7 Press the ▷ (**Start**) button to send the scanned files.

Scanning to USB Storage Device

The Scan to USB Memory feature allows you to scan documents and save the scanned data to a USB storage device. To scan documents and save them, follow the steps below:

1 Insert the USB storage device into the USB port on your printer.
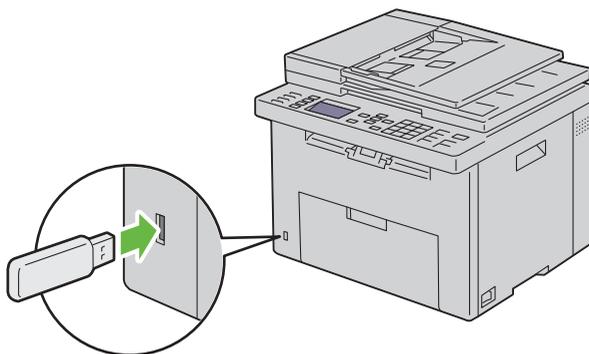
2 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document face down on the document glass.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 296.

3 Press the ⤳ (**Scan**) button.

4 Ensure that Scan to USB Memory is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

5 Press the ∨ button until the your desired folder is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

6 Press the ▷ (**Start**) button.

Sending an E-Mail with the Scanned Image

To send an e-mail attached with the scanned image from your printer, follow the steps below:

- Setup the E-mail address book through the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. See "Setting an E-Mail Address Book" on page 281 for more details.

Setting an E-Mail Address Book

1 Open a web browser.

2 Type in the IP address of the printer in the address bar and click **Go**. The printer's Web page appears.

3 Click the **Address Book** tab.

The login dialog box appears.

4 Type in the administrator login ID and password registered on the printer.

5 Click **Address Book**.
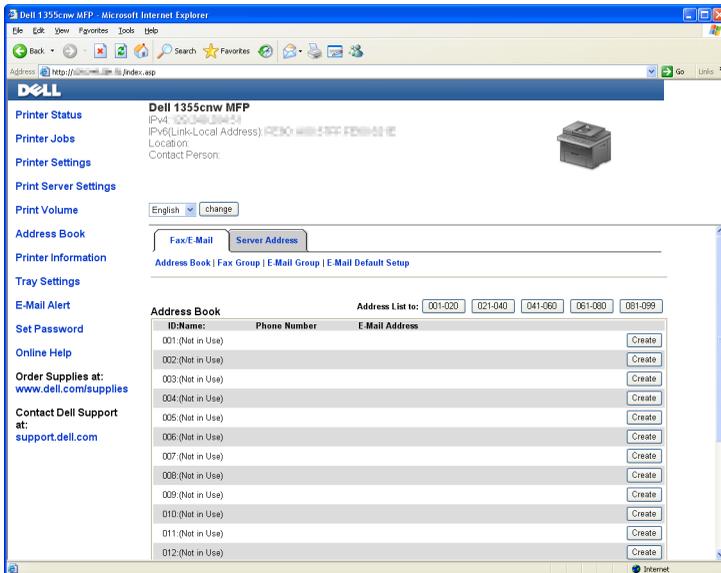
6 Click **Create**.
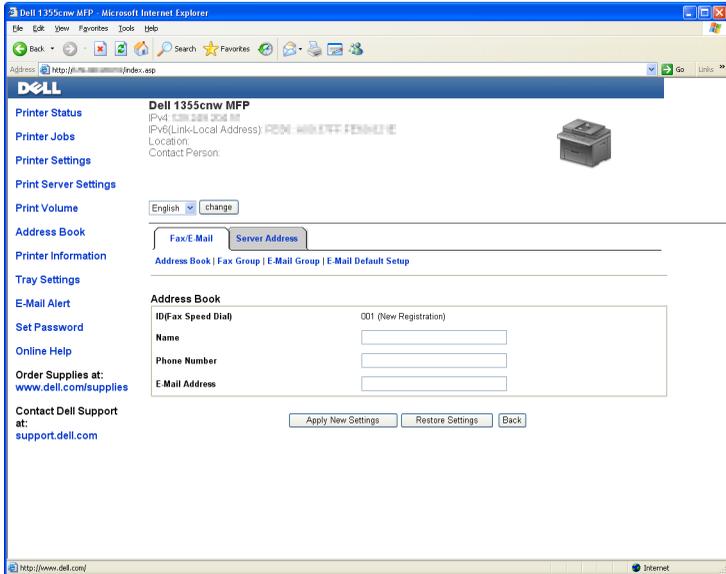
7 Enter a name and e-mail address in the **Name** and **E-mail Address** fields.

8 Click the **Apply New Settings** button.

Sending an E-mail With the Scanned File

1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document face down on the document glass.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 296.

2 Press the ⬦ (**Scan**) button.

3 Press the ⌄ button until `Scan to Email` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

4 Ensure that `Email to` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

5 Press the ⌄ button to select the setting listed below, and then press the ✓ button.

`Keypad:` Type the e-mail address directly and then press the ✓ button.

`Address Book`: Select the e-mail address registered in the E-mail address book, and then press the ✓ button.

`Email Group`: Select the e-mail group registered in the E-mail Groups, and then press the ✓ button.

📝 **NOTE:** Users need to be registered before you can select `Address Book` on the operator panel.

6 Press the ▷ (**Start**) button to send e-mail.

18

Faxing

Using the Numeric Keypad to Enter Characters

As you perform various tasks, you may need to enter names and numbers. For example, when you set up your printer, you enter your name or your company name and telephone number. When you store speed dial or group dial numbers, you may also need to enter the corresponding names.
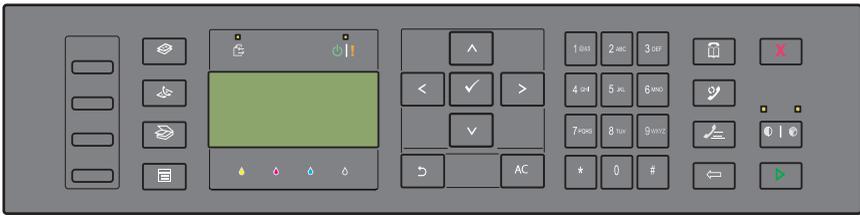
- When prompted to enter a letter, press the appropriate button until the correct letter appears on the display.

  For example, to enter the letter O, press 6.

  - Each time you press 6, the display shows a different letter, M, N, O and finally 6.
  - To enter additional letters, repeat the first step.
  - Press the ✓ button when you are finished.

Keypad Letters and Numbers

Key	Assigned numbers, letters or characters
1	@ : . / 1
2	a b c A B C 2
3	d e f D E F 3
4	g h i G H I 4
5	j k l J K L 5

Key	Assigned numbers, letters or characters
6	m n o M N O 6
7	p q r s P Q R S 7
8	t u v T U V 8
9	w x y z W X Y Z 9
0	0
*	- _ ~
#	@ . ¥ _ ! " # $ % & ' ~ ^ | ` ; : ? , (space) + - * / = ( ) [ ] { } < >

Changing Numbers or Names

If an incorrect name or number is entered, press the ⟵ (**Backspace**) button to delete the last digit or character. Then enter the correct number or character.

Inserting a Pause

For some telephone systems, it is necessary to dial an access code and listen for a second dial tone. A pause must be entered in order for the access code to function. For example, enter the access code 9 and then press the 📞 (**Redial/Pause**) button before entering the telephone number. "-" appears on the display to indicate when a pause is entered.

Configuring Fax Initial Settings

NOTE: The following settings can be configured also using **Advance Tools** on **Easy Setup Navigator**.

Setting Your Country

You need to set the country where your printer is used for using the fax service on the printer.

1   Press the ▤ (**Menu**) button.

2   Press the ∨ button until System is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

3 Press the ∨ button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

4 Press the ∨ button until `Fax Settings` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

5 Press the ∨ button until `Country` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

6 Press the ∨ button to select the country where the printer is used, and then press the ✓ button.

7 Ensure that `Are You Sure?` is displayed, press the ∨ button to select `Yes`, and then press the ✓ button.

The printer restarts automatically to apply the settings.

✐ **NOTE:** In case of either one, when you configure the country setting, the information, which is registered to the device, is initialized.

Setting the Printer ID

In most countries, you are required by law to indicate your fax number on any fax you send. The printer ID, containing your telephone number and name or company name, will be printed at the top of each page sent from your printer.

1 Press the ▤ (**Menu**) button.

2 Press the ∨ button until `System` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

3 Press the ∨ button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

4 Press the ∨ button until `Fax Settings` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

5 Press the ∨ button until `Fax Number` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

6 Enter your fax number using the number keypad.

✐ **NOTE:** If you make a mistake while entering numbers, press the ⇐ (**Backspace**) button to delete the last digit.

7 Press the ✓ button when the number on the display is correct.

8 Press the ∧ button until `Company Name` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

9 Enter your name or company name using the numeric keypad.

You can enter alphanumeric characters using the numeric keypad, including special symbols by pressing the 1, *, and # buttons.

For details on how to use the numeric keypad to enter alphanumeric characters, see "Using the Numeric Keypad to Enter Characters" on page 285.

10 Press the ✓ button when the name on the display is correct.

11 To return to the previous screen, press the ↩ (**Back**) button.

Setting the Time and Date

📝 **NOTE:** It may be necessary to reset the correct time and date if loss of power to the printer occurs.

1 Press the ☰ (**Menu**) button.

2 Press the ∨ button until System is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

3 Press the ∨ button until Admin Menu is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

4 Press the ∨ button until System Settings is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

5 Press the ∨ button until Date & Time is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

6 Ensure that Set Date is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

7 Enter the correct date using the numeric keypad, or press the ∨ button to select the correct date.

📝 **NOTE:** If you make a mistake while entering numbers, press the ＜ button to re-enter the digit.

8 Press the ✓ button when the date on the display is correct.

9 Press the ∨ button until Set Time is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

10 Enter the correct time using the numeric keypad, or press the ∨ button to select the correct time.

11 Press the ✓ button when the time on the display is correct.

12 To return to the previous screen, press the ↰ (**Back**) button.

Changing the Clock Mode

You can set the current time using either the 12-hour or the 24-hour format.

1 Press the ☰ (**Menu**) button.

2 Press the ⋁ button until System is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

3 Press the ⋁ button until Admin Menu is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

4 Press the ⋁ button until System Settings is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

5 Press the ⋁ button until Date & Time is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

6 Press the ⋁ button until Date Format is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

7 Press the ⋁ button until the desired format is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

8 To return to the previous screen, press the ↰ (**Back**) button.

Setting Sounds

Speaker Volume

1 Press the ☰ (**Menu**) button.

2 Press the ⋁ button until System is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

3 Press the ⋁ button until Admin Menu is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

4 Press the ⋁ button until Fax Settings is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

5 Press the ⋁ button until Line Monitor is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

6 Press the ⋁ button until the desired volume is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

7 Reboot the printer by turning the power switch off and then on.

Ringer Volume

1 Press the ☰ (**Menu**) button.

2 Press the ⋁ button until System is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

3 Press the ⋁ button until Admin Menu is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

4 Press the ⋁ button until Fax Settings is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

5 Press the ⋁ button until Ring Tone Volume is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

6 Press the ⋁ button until the desired volume is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

7 Reboot the printer by turning the power switch off and then on.

Specifying the Fax Settings

Changing the Fax Settings Options

1 Press the ☰ (**Menu**) button.

2 Press the ⋁ button until System is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

3 Press the ⋁ button until Admin Menu is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

4 Press the ⋁ button until Fax Settings is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

5 Press the ⋁ button until the desired menu item is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

6 Press the ❯ or ⋁ button until the desired setting is highlighted or enter the value using the numeric keypad.

7 Press the ✓ button to save the selection.

8 If necessary, repeat steps 5 to 7.

9 To return to the previous screen, press the ↩ (**Back**) button.

Available Fax Settings Options

You can use the following settings options for configuring the fax system:

Option		Description
Receive Mode	TEL Mode	Automatic fax reception is turned off. You can receive a fax by picking up the handset of the external telephone, pressing the remote receive code, and then pressing ▷.
	FAX Mode*	Automatically receives faxes.
	TEL/FAX Mode	When the printer receives an incoming fax, the external telephone rings for the time specified in **Auto Rec TEL/FAX**, and then the printer automatically receives a fax. If an incoming call is not a fax, the printer beeps from the internal speaker indicating that the call is a telephone call.
	Ans/FAX Mode	The printer can share a telephone line with an answering machine. In this mode, the printer will monitor the fax signal and pick up the line if there are fax tones. If the phone communication is using serial transmission in your country (such as Germany, Sweden, Denmark, Austria, Belgium, Italy, France and Switzerland), this mode is not supported.
	DRPD Mode	Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) option, a distinctive ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. After the telephone company has provided a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern, configure the fax setup to monitor for that specific ring pattern.
Auto Rec Fax		Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call.
Auto Rec TEL/FAX		Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call.

Option	Description
Auto Rec Ans/FAX	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call.
Line Monitor	Sets the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.
Ring Tone Volume	Sets the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when **Receive Mode** is set to **Telephone/Fax**.
Line Type	Sets the line type.
Tone/Pulse	Sets the dialing type.
Resend Delay	Specifies the interval between transmission attempts.
Redial Attempts	Specifies the number of redial attempts to make when the destination fax number is busy. If you enter 0, the printer will not redial.
Redial Delay	Specifies the interval between redial attempts.
Junk Fax Setup	Sets whether to reject faxes sent from unwanted numbers by accepting faxes only from the fax numbers registered in the Phone Book.
Remote Receive	Sets whether to receive a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.
Remote Rcv Tone	Specifies the remote receive code in two digits to start **Remote Receive**.
Fax Header	Sets whether to print the information of sender on the header of faxes.
Company Name	Sets the name of sender to be printed on the header of faxes. Up to 30 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
Fax Number	Sets the fax number of the printer to be printed on the header of faxes.
Fax Cover Page	Sets whether to attach a cover page to faxes.
DRPD Pattern	Sets the DRPD setting from **Pattern 1** to **Pattern 7**. DRPD is a service provided by some telephone companies.
Forward Settings	Sets whether to forward incoming faxes to a specified destination.

Option	Description
Fax Fwd Number	Specifies the fax number of the destination to which incoming faxes will be forwarded.
Prefix Dial	Specifies whether to set a prefix dial number.
Prefix Dial Num	Sets a prefix dial number of up to five digits. This number dials before any auto dial number is started. It is useful for accessing the Private Automatic Branch Exchange (PABX).
Discard Size	Sets whether to discard text or images at the bottom of a fax page when the entire page does not fit onto the output paper. Selecting **Auto Reduction** automatically reduces the fax page to fit it onto the output paper, and does not discard any images or text at the bottom of the page.
ECM	Sets whether to enable the ECM. To use the ECM, the remote machines must also support the ECM.
Modem Speed	Specifies the fax modem speed when a fax transmission or reception error occurs.
Fax Activity	Sets whether to automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.
Fax Transmit	Sets whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission or only when an error occurs.
Fax Broadcast	Sets whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission to multiple destinations or only when an error occurs.
Protocol Monitor	Sets whether to print a protocol monitor report after every fax transmission or only when an error occurs.
Country	Sets the country where the printer is used.

Prefix Dial

NOTE: Prefix Dial only supports the environment where you send a fax to the external line number. To use Prefix Dial, you must do the following from the operator panel.

1 Press the ▤ (**Menu**) button.

2 Press the ∨ button until System is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

3 Press the ∨ button until Admin Menu is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

4 Press the ∨ button until `Fax Settings` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

5 Press the ∨ button until `Line Type` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

6 Press the ∨ button until `PBX` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

7 Press the ↰ (**Back**) button to return to the previous menu.

8 Press the ∨ button until `Prefix Dial` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

9 Press the ∨ button until `On` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

10 Press the ↰ (**Back**) button to return to the previous menu.

11 Press the ∨ button until `Prefix Dial Num` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

12 Enter an up-to-five-digit prefix number from 0–9, *, and #.

13 Press the ✓ button when the prefix dial number on the display is correct.

14 Reboot the printer by turning the power switch off and then on.

Advanced Fax Settings

✏ **NOTE:** The advanced fax settings are only meant for advanced users. Incorrect settings on this printer may damage the device.

If you are experiencing fax send or receive errors, there is an advanced fax settings menu which you can access and change the settings accordingly.

To enter the Diagnostic Menu (Customer Mode), follow the instructions.

1 Turn off the printer.

2 Disconnect all network, phone line, and USB cables from the device.

3 Turn on the printer while holding down the ∨ and ∧ buttons.

The `Customer Mode` menu appears.

4 After all the advanced fax settings have been made, you will need to turn off and on the printer for the new settings to be effective.

Fax Data Encoding Method

Some of the legacy fax devices do not support the Joint Bi-level Image Experts Group (JBIG) data encoding method. You may experience fax send or receive errors due to this data encoding method. You can disable the JBIG and select the Modified Huffman (MH), Modified Read (MR), or Modified Modified Read (MMR) encoding with the following instructions.

You can change the modem transmission encoding with the following instructions.

1   When the printer is in `Customer Mode`, select `Fax/Scanner Diag` and press the ✓ button.

2   Press the ⋁ button until `Parameter` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

3   Press the ⋁ button until `FAX Parameter` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

4   Press the ⋁ button until `G3M TX Coding` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

5   Press the ⋁ button until `MMR` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button to enable MMR encoding, select `MR` to enable `MR` encoding, or select `MH` to enable `MH` encoding.

You can change the modem receive encoding with the following instructions.

1   When the printer is in `Customer Mode`, select `Fax/Scanner Diag` and press the ✓ button.

2   Press the ⋁ button until `Parameter` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

3   Press the ⋁ button until `FAX Parameter` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

4   Press the ⋁ button until `G3M RX Coding` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

5   Press the ⋁ button until `MMR` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button to enable MMR encoding, select `MR` to enable `MR` encoding, or select `MH` to enable `MH` encoding.

Sending a Fax

You can fax data from your printer. You can also directly fax data transferred from the computer running a Microsoft® Windows® operating system.

Loading an Original Document on the ADF

> **NOTICE:** Do not load more than 35 sheets into the ADF or allow more than 35 sheets to be fed to the ADF output tray. The ADF output tray should be emptied before it exceeds 35 sheets or your original documents may be damaged.

> **NOTE:** To get the best scan quality, especially for gray scale images, use the document glass instead of the ADF.

1   Place the document(s) face up on the ADF with the top edge of the documents in first. Then adjust the document guides to the correct document size.
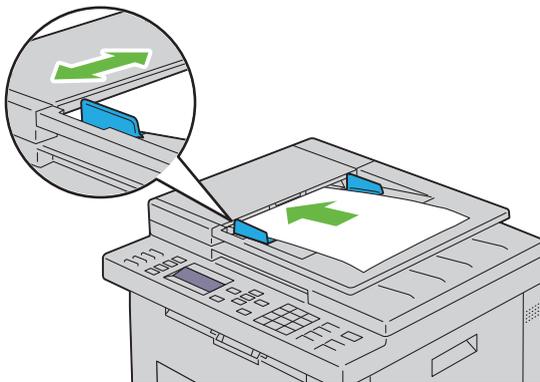
2   Adjust the document resolution, referring to "Resolution" on page 298.

Loading an Original Document on the Document Glass
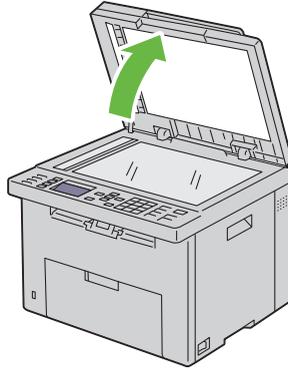
1   Open the document cover.

2 Place the document face down on the document glass and align it with the registration guide on the top left corner of the glass.
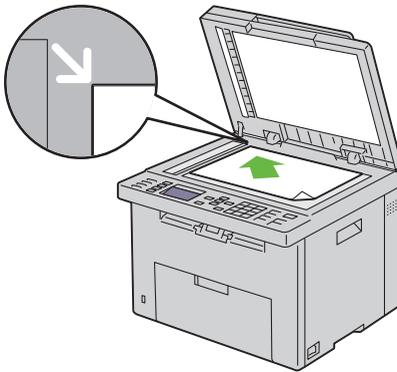
3 Adjust the document resolution, referring to "Resolution" on page 298.

4 Close the document cover.

📝 **NOTE:** Ensure that no document is in the ADF. If any document is detected in the ADF, it takes priority over the document on the document glass.

📝 **NOTE:** If you are faxing a page from a book or magazine, lift the document cover until its hinges are caught by the stopper and then close the cover. If the book or magazine is thicker than 30 mm, start faxing with the cover open.

Resolution

To specify the resolution level to be used for fax transmission:

1 Press the ⚙ (**Fax**) button.

2 Press the ∨ button until `Resolution` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

3 Press the ∨ button until the desired menu item is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

📝 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Standard*	Suitable for documents with normal sized characters.
Fine	Suitable for documents containing small characters or thin lines or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.
Super Fine	Suitable for documents containing extremely fine detail. The super fine mode is enabled only if the remote machine also supports the super fine resolution.
Ultra Fine	Suitable for documents containing photographic images.

📝 **NOTE:** Faxes scanned in the `Super Fine` mode transmit at the highest resolution supported by the receiving device.

Document Type

To select the default document type for the current fax job:

1 Press the ⚙ (**Fax**) button.

2 Press the ∨ button until `Document Type` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

3 Press the ∨ button to select the desired setting, and then press the ✓ button.

Text	Suitable for documents with text.
Photo	Suitable for documents with photos.

Lighter/Darker

To adjust the contrast to make the fax lighter or darker than the original:

1 Press the ⟨Fax⟩ button.

2 Press the ∨ button until `Lighter/Darker` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

3 Press the 〉 or 〈 button to select the desired setting, and then press the ✓ button.

> 📝 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Lighter2	Makes the fax lighter than the original. Works well with dark print.
Lighter1	
Normal*	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
Darker1	Makes the fax darker than the original. Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
Darker2	

Sending a Fax Automatically

1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF:

OR

Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 296.

2 Press the ⟨Fax⟩ button.

3 Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs. For more information, see "Resolution" on page 298.

If you need to change the contrast, see "Lighter/Darker" on page 299.

4 You can select a fax number in one of the following ways:

- Ensure that `Fax to` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button. Press the ∨ button until `Phone Book` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button. Press the 〉 button to select the recipients.
- Press the **One Touch Dial** button.

- Press the ▯▯ (**Contacts**) button, select `All Entries, Group Dial,` or `Search` using the ∨ button, and then press the ✓ button.

All Entries	Displays a list of registered fax numbers. Press the ❯ button to select the recipients.
Group Dial	Press the ❯ button to select the recipients.
Search	Searches a fax number from the Phone Book. Enter the text you want to search, and then press the ✓ button. Press the ❯ button to select the recipients.

- Press the 🅥 (**Redial/Pause**) button to redial.
- Press the 📟 (**Speed Dial**) button. Enter the speed dial number between 01 and 99 using the numeric keypad, and then press the ✓ button.

📖 **NOTE:** Before you use the **One Touch Dial** button, you need to register a number for the speed dial. For more information on how to store the number, see "Automatic Dialing" on page 311.

5 Press the ▷ (**Start**) button.

When you are using the document glass, the display prompts you for another page. Press the ∨ button to select `Yes` or `No`, and then press the ✓ button.

6 The number is dialed and then the printer begins sending the fax when the remote fax machine is ready.

📖 **NOTE:** Press the ✕ (**Cancel**) button to cancel the fax job at any time while sending the fax.

Sending a Fax Manually

1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 296.

2   Press the ⚒ (**Fax**) button.

3   Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs. For more information, see "Resolution" on page 298.

    If you need to change the contrast, see "Lighter/Darker" on page 299.

4   Press the ∨ button until OnHook is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

5   Press the ∨ button until On is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

6   Enter the fax number of the remote fax machine using the numeric keypad.

    • If the document is loaded on the ADF, press the ▷ (**Start**) button.

    • If the document is not loaded on the ADF, press the ▷ (**Start**) button, press the ∨ button until the desired setting appears, and then press the ✓ button.

📝 **NOTE:** Press the ✗ (Cancel) button and the ✓ button to cancel the fax job at any time while sending the fax.

Confirming Transmissions

When the last page of your document has been sent successfully, the printer beeps and returns to the standby mode.

If something goes wrong while sending your fax, an error message appears on the display.

If you receive an error message, press the ✗ (**Cancel**) button to clear the message and try to send the document again.

You can set your printer to print a confirmation report automatically after each fax transmission. For more information, see "Printing a Report" on page 319.

Automatic Redialing

If the number you have dialed is busy or there is no answer when you send a fax, the printer will automatically redial the number every minute based on the number set in the redial settings.

To change the time interval between redials and the number of redial attempts, see "Available Fax Settings Options" on page 291.

NOTE: The printer will not automatically redial a number that was busy when the number was manually entered.

Sending a Delayed Fax

The Delayed Start mode can be used to save scanned documents for transmission at a specified time in order to take advantage of lower long distance rates.

1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.

   OR

   Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

   For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 296.

2 Press the ⤺ (**Fax**) button.

3 Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs. For more information, see "Resolution" on page 298.

   If you need to change the contrast, see "Lighter/Darker" on page 299.

4 Press the ∨ button until `Delayed Start` is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

5 Press the ∨ button until `On` is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

6 Enter the start time using the numeric keypad or press the ∨ or ∧ button to select the start time, and then press the ✔ button.

7 Press the ∨ button until `Fax to` is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

8 Ensure that `Keypad` is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

9 Enter the number of the remote machine using the numeric keypad, and then press the ✔ button.

You can also use speed dial or group dial numbers. For more information, see "Automatic Dialing" on page 311.

Press the ▷ (**Start**) button to begin faxing.

Once Delayed Start mode is activated, your printer stores all the documents to be faxed to its memory and sends them at the specified time. After faxing in the Delayed Start mode is complete, the data in the memory is cleared.

NOTE: If you turn off and on the printer, the stored documents are sent as soon as the printer is activated.

Sending a Fax from the Driver (Direct Fax)

You can send a fax directly from your computer by using the driver.

NOTE: Only black and white faxes can be sent using Direct Fax.

Example

Send data via the Dell 1355cnw Color MFP FAX driver   Send fax

Sending machine (Dell 1355cn Multifunction Color Printer) → Receiving machine (fax machine/multifunction printer)
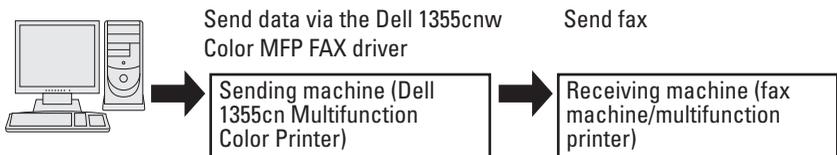
For Microsoft Windows:

NOTE: The names of the windows and the buttons may be different from those given in the following procedure depending on the application you are using.

NOTE: To use this feature, you must install the fax driver.

1 Open the file you want to send by fax.

2 Open the print dialog box from the application, and then select **Dell 1355cnw Color MFP FAX**.

3 Click **Preferences**.
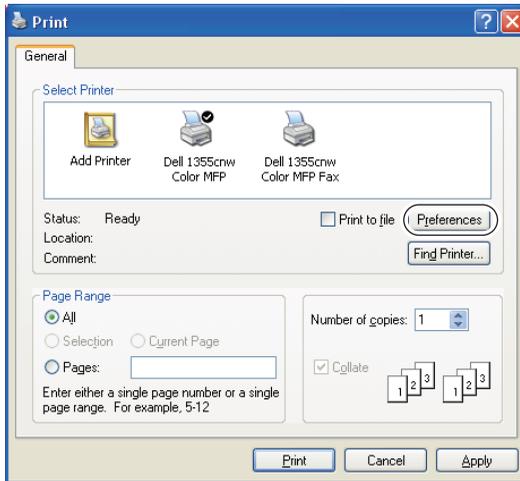
4   The **Printing Preferences** dialog box appears. Specify the fax settings. For more information, click the **Help** of the driver.

> ✍ **NOTE:** The settings done here are only applied to a single fax job.
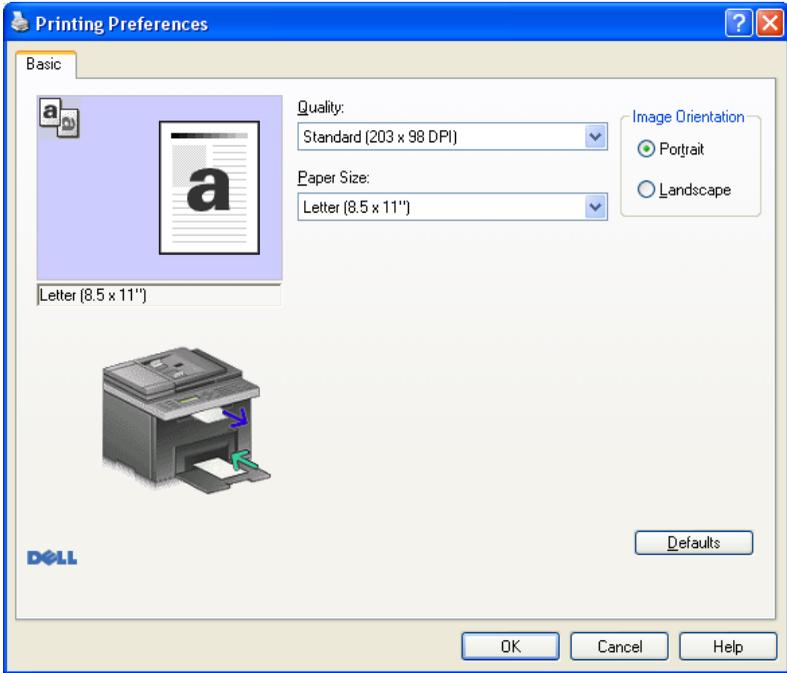
5 Click **OK** to close the **Printing Preferences** dialog box.

6 Click **Print**. The **Set / Check Fax Transmission**: dialog box appears.

7 Specify the destination for the recipient in one of the following ways:

- Enter a name and phone number directly.
- Select a recipient from a phone book saved on your computer.
- Select a recipient from a database other than a phone book or address book.

For more information on how to specify the destination, see the **Help** of the driver.
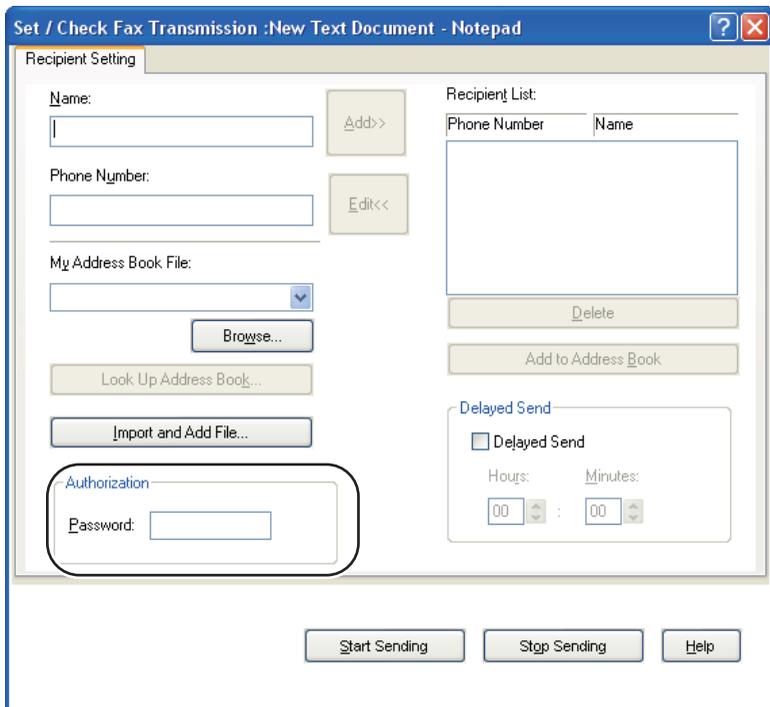
NOTE: Enter the password in the **Password** field in the **Authorization** area before sending a fax if the Fax service is locked with a password.

8 Click **Start Sending**.

For Apple Macintosh:

NOTE: The names of the windows and the buttons may be different from those given in the following procedure depending on the application you are using.

NOTE: When using a USB connection on Mac OS 10.4.x, upgrade Common Unix Printing System (CUPS) software to version 1.2.12 or later. You can download it from CUPS web site.

1 Open the file you want to send by fax.

2 Open the print dialog box from the application, and then select **Dell 1355 Color MFP Fax**.
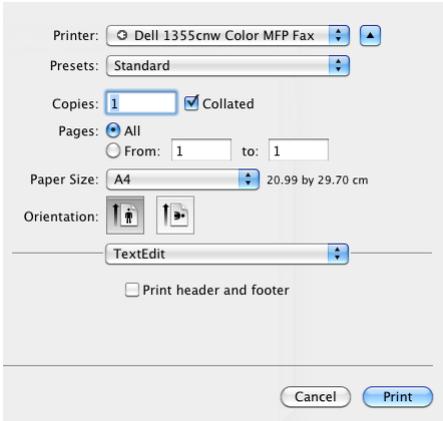
3 Specify the fax settings.

> ![NOTE] **NOTE:** The settings done here are only applied to a single fax job.

4 Click **Print**. The **Fax Recipient** dialog box appears.

5 Specify the destination for the recipient in one of the following ways:

- Enter a name and phone number directly.
- Select a recipient from a phone book saved on your computer.

> **NOTE:** Enter the password in the **Password** field in the **Authorization** area before sending a fax if the Fax service is locked with a password.

6 Click **OK**.

Receiving a Fax

About Receiving Modes

> **NOTE:** To use the `TEL/FAX Mode` or `Ans/Fax mode`, attach an answering machine to the phone connector (📞) on the back of your printer.

When the memory is full, the fax is received in the `TEL Mode`.

Loading Paper for Receiving Faxes

The instructions for loading paper in the PSI are the same whether you are printing, faxing, or copying, except that faxes can only be printed on Letter-, A4-, or Legal-sized paper. For details about loading paper, see "Loading Print Media" on page 201. For details about setting the paper type and size in the PSI, see "Print Media Guidelines" on page 189.

Receiving a Fax Automatically in the Fax Mode

Your printer is preset to the fax mode at the factory.

If you receive a fax, the printer automatically goes into the fax mode after a specified period of time and receives the fax.

To change the interval at which the printer goes into the fax mode after receiving an incoming call, see "Available Fax Settings Options" on page 291.

Receiving a Fax Manually in the Telephone Mode

You can receive a fax by picking up the handset of the external telephone, and then pressing the ▶ **(Start)** button.

The printer begins receiving a fax and returns to the standby mode when the reception is completed.

Receiving a Fax Automatically in the Telephone/Fax or Ans/Fax Mode

To use the TEL/FAX Mode or Ans/FAX Mode, you must attach an external telephone to the phone connector (📞) on the back of your printer.

If the caller leaves a message, the answering machine stores the message as it would normally. If your printer hears a fax tone on the line, it automatically starts to receive a fax.

> **NOTE:** If you have set your printer to Auto Answer Fax and your answering machine is switched off, or no answering machine is connected to your printer, your printer will automatically go into the Fax mode after a predefined time.

Receiving a Fax Manually Using an External Telephone

This feature works best when you are using an external telephone connected to the phone connector (📞) on the back of your printer. You can receive a fax from someone you are talking to on the external telephone without having to go to the printer.

When you receive a call on the external telephone and hear fax tones, press the two-digit keys on the external telephone, or set On Hook to Off and then press the ▶ **(Start)** button.

The printer receives the document.

Press the buttons slowly in sequence. If you still hear the fax tone from the remote machine, try pressing the two-digit keys once again.

The remote receive code is set to `Off` at the factory. You can change the two-digit number to whatever you choose. For details on changing the code, see "Available Fax Settings Options" on page 291.

> ✏️ **NOTE:** Set the dialing system of your external telephone to DTMF.

Receiving Faxes Using the DRPD Mode

The DRPD is a telephone company service which enables a user to use a single telephone line to answer several different telephone numbers. The particular number someone uses to call you on is identified by different ringing patterns, which consist of various combinations of long and short ringing sounds.

Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection option, Distinctive Ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. To set up Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection, you will need another telephone line at your location, or someone available to dial your FAX number from outside.

To set up the DRPD:

1 Press the ☰ (**Menu**) button.

2 Press the ⋁ button until `System` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

3 Press the ⋁ button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

4 Press the ⋁ button until `Fax Settings` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

5 Press the ⋁ button until `DRPD Pattern` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

6 Press the ⋁ button until the desired menu item is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

7 To return to the previous screen, press the ↩ (**Back**) button.

To receive faxes in the `DRPD`, you need to set the menu to DRPD Mode; see "Available Fax Settings Options" on page 291.

Your printer provides seven DRPD patterns. If this service is available from your telephone company, ask your telephone company which pattern you need to select to use this service.

Receiving Faxes in the Memory

Since your printer is a multi-tasking device, it can receive faxes while you are making copies or printing. If you receive a fax while you are copying, printing, or run out of paper or toner, your printer stores incoming faxes in the memory. Then, as soon as you finish copying, printing, or re-supply the consumables, the printer automatically prints the fax.

Polling Receive

You can receive faxes from the remote fax machine when you want to receive it.

1 Press the ✎ (**Fax**) button.

2 Press the ∨ button until `Polling Receive` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

3 Press the ∨ button until `On` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

4 Enter the fax number of the remote machine, and then press the ✓ button.

> 📝 **NOTE:** For information on how to enter the fax number of the remote machine, see "Sending a Fax Manually" on page 300 or "Sending a Fax Automatically" on page 299.

5 Press the ▷ (**Start**) button.

Automatic Dialing

Speed Dialing

You can store up to 99 frequently dialed numbers in speed dial locations (01–99).

When the speed dial job specified in the delayed fax or redial exists, you cannot change the speed dial number from the operator panel or Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.

Storing a Number for Speed Dialing

1 Press the ▤ (**Menu**) button.

2 Press the ∨ button until System is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

3 Press the ∨ button until Admin Menu is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

4 Press the ∨ button until Phone Book is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

5 Ensure that Speed Dial is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

6 Press the ∨ button until the desired speed dial number between 01 and 99 is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

7 Ensure that Name is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

8 Enter the name, and then press the ✓ button.

9 Ensure that Phone Number is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

10 Enter the number you want to store using the numeric keypad, and then press the ✓ button.

To insert a pause between numbers, press the ✆ (**Redial/Pause**) button. "-" appears on the display.

11 Ensure that Apply Settings is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

12 Ensure that Are You Sure? is displayed, press the ∨ button to select Yes, and then press the ✓ button.

13 To store more fax numbers, repeat steps 6 to 12.

14 To return to the previous screen, press the ↰ (**Back**) button.

Sending a Fax Using a Speed Dial

1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 296.

2 To enter the speed dial number do either of the following after pressing the ⌨ (**Fax**) button:

- Ensure that Fax to is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button. Press the ⌄ button until Speed Dial is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

- Press the ⤚ (**Speed Dial**) button.

3 Enter the speed dial number between 01 and 99 using the numeric keypad, and then press the ✔ button.

The corresponding entry's name briefly displays. To confirm the name again, press the ✔ button.

4 Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs. For more information, see "Resolution" on page 298.

If you need to change the contrast, see "Lighter/Darker" on page 299.

5 Press the ▷ (**Start**) button.

6 The document scans to the memory.

When you are using the document glass, the display prompts you for another page. Press the ⌄ button to select Yes to add more documents or to select No to begin sending the fax immediately, and then press the ✔ button.

7 The fax number stored in the speed dial location is automatically dialed. The document is sent when the remote fax machine answers.

📝 **NOTE:** Using the asterisk (*) in the first digit, you can send a document to multiple locations. For example, if you enter 0*, you can send a document to the locations registered between 01 and 09.

Group Dialing

If you frequently send the same document to several destinations, you can create a group of these destinations and set them under a one-digit group dial location. This enables you to use a group dial number setting to send the same document to all the destinations in the group.

📝 **NOTE:** You cannot include one group dial number within another group dial number.

Setting Group Dial

1 Press the ▤ (**Menu**) button.

2 Press the ⋁ button until `System` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

3 Press the ⋁ button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

4 Press the ⋁ button until `Phone Book` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

5 Press the ⋁ button until `Group Dial` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

6 Press the ⋁ button until the desired group dial number between 1 and 6 is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

7 Ensure that `Name` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

8 Enter the name, and then press the ✓ button.

9 Ensure that `Speed Dial No` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

10 Press the ⋁ button until the desired number is highlighted, press the ❯ button to select the speed dial numbers, and then press the ✓ button.

11 Ensure that `Apply Settings` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

12 Ensure that `Are You Sure?` is displayed, press the ⋁ button to select `Yes`, and then press the ✓ button.

13 To store more group dial numbers, repeat steps 6 to 12.

14 To return to the previous screen, press the ↰ (**Back**) button.

Editing Group Dial

You can delete a specific speed dial number from a selected group or add a new number to the selected group.

1 Press the ▤ (**Menu**) button.

2 Press the ⋁ button until `System` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

3 Press the ∨ button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

4 Press the ∨ button until `Phone Book` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

5 Press the ∨ button until `Group Dial` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

6 Press the ∨ button until the group dial number that you want to edit is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

7 To change the group dial name:

    a Ensure that `Name` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

    b Enter a new name, and then press the ✓ button.

    c Press the ∨ button until `Apply settings` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

    d Ensure that `Are You Sure?` is displayed, press the ∨ button to select `Yes`, and then press the ✓ button.

8 To change the speed dial number:

    a Press the ∨ button until `Speed Dial No` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

    b Press the ∨ button until the speed dial number that you want to edit is highlighted, and then press the > button to select or deselect the speed dial number. Press the ✓ button.

    c Press the ∨ button until `Apply settings` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

    d Ensure that `Are You Sure?` is displayed, press the ∨ button to select `Yes`, and then press the ✓ button.

9 To delete the group dial:

    a Press the ⬅ (**Backspace**) button.

    b Ensure that `Are You Sure?` is displayed, press the ∨ button to select `Yes`, and then press the ✓ button.

    ✐ **NOTE:** When you delete the last speed dial in a group, the group itself is not deleted.

10 If you want to edit another group dial number or enter a new group dial number, repeat steps 5 to 9.

11 To return to the previous screen, press the ↩ (**Back**) button.

Sending a Fax Using Group Dialing (Multi-address Transmission)

You can use group dialing for broadcasting or delayed transmissions.

Follow the procedure of the desired operation (For Delayed transmission, see "Specifying the Fax Settings" on page 290).

You can use one or more group numbers in one operation. Then continue the procedure to complete the desired operation.

Your printer automatically scans the document loaded in the Automatic Document Feeder or on the document glass into the memory. The printer dials each of the numbers included in the group.

Printing an Address Book List

You can check your automatic dial setting by printing a speed dial list.

1 Press the ☰ (**Menu**) button.

2 Press the ⋁ button until System is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

3 Press the ⋁ button until Report/List is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

4 Press the ⋁ button until Address Book is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

A list of your speed dial entries is printed.

Other Ways to Fax

Using the Secure Receiving Mode

You may need to prevent your received faxes from being accessed by unauthorized people. You can turn on the secure fax mode using the **Secure Receive** option to restrict printing out all of the received faxes when the printer is unattended. In the secure fax mode, all incoming faxes will get saved in the memory. When the mode turns off, any faxes stored will be printed.

📝 **NOTE:** Before operation, ensure that Panel Lock Set is set to Enable.

To turn the secure receiving mode on:

1 Press the ▤ (**Menu**) button.

2 Press the ∨ button until `System` is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

3 Press the ∨ button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

4 Press the ∨ button until `Secure Settings` is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

5 Press the ∨ button until `Secure Receive` is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

6 Ensure that `Secure Receive Set` is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

7 Press the ∨ button until `Enable` is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

> ✐ **NOTE:** The factory-default password is 0000.

8 To return to the standby mode, press the ▤ (**Menu**) button.

When a fax is received in the secure receiving mode, your printer stores it into memory and the `Job Status` screen displays "`Secure Receive`" to let you know that there is a fax stored.

> ✐ **NOTE:** If you change the password while `Secure Receive Set` is `Enable`, perform steps 1 to 5. Press the ∨ button until `Change Password` is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button. Enter the new password, and then press the ✔ button.

To print received documents:

1 Press the ▤ (**Menu**) button.

2 Press the ∨ button until `Job Status` is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

3 Press the ∨ button until `Secure Receive` is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

4 Enter the password, and then press the ✔ button.

The faxes stored in memory are printed.

To turn the secure receiving mode off:

1 Access the `Secure Receive Set` menu by following steps 1 to 6 in "To turn the secure receiving mode on:".

2 Press the ∨ button until `Disable` is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

3 To return to the previous screen, press the ↰ **(Back)** button.

Using an Answering Machine

To the wall jack   Printer   Line   Telephone Answering Device   Phone
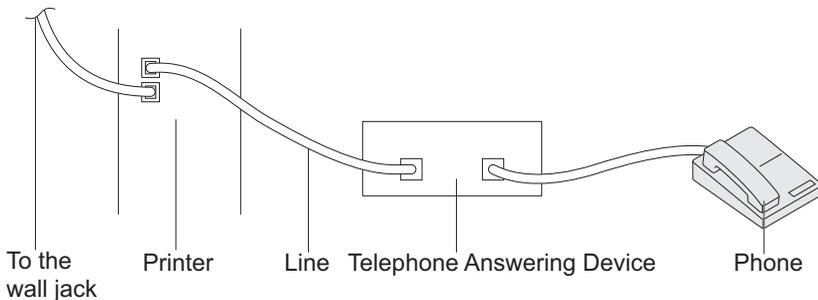
You can connect a telephone answering device (TAD) directly to the back of your printer as shown above.

- Set your printer to the `Ans/FAX Mode` and set `Auto Rec Ans/FAX` to specify the time for the TAD.

- When the TAD picks up the call, the printer monitors and takes the line if fax tones are received and then starts receiving the fax.

- If the answering device is off, the printer automatically goes into the `Fax` after the ring tone sounds for a predefined time.

- If you answer the call and hear fax tones, the printer will answer the fax call if you

  →｜Set `On Hook` to `On` (you can hear voice or fax tones from the remote machine), and then press the ▷ **(Start)** button and hang up the receiver.

  OR

  →｜Press the two-digit remote receive code and hang up the receiver.

Using a Computer Modem

Line
Printer
Telephone Answering Device
Phone
To the internet
Computer
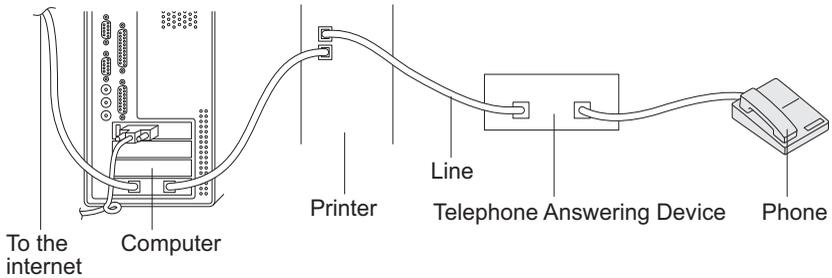
If you want to use your computer modem for faxing or for a dial-up internet connection, connect the computer modem directly to the back of your printer with the TAD as shown above.

- Set your printer to the `Ans/FAX Mode` and set `Auto Rec. Ans/FAX` to specify the time for the TAD.
- Turn off the computer modem's fax-receive feature.
- Do not use the computer modem if your printer is sending or receiving a fax.
- Follow the instructions provided with your computer modem and fax application to fax via the computer modem.

Printing a Report

The following reports may be useful when using fax:

Address Book

This list shows all the addresses currently stored in the memory of the printer as **Address Book** information.

Fax Activity

This report shows information about the faxes you recently received or sent.

Protocol Monitor

This report shows information about the faxes you recently received or sent.

Procedures:

1 Press the ☰ (**Menu**) button.

2 Press the ⋁ button until System is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

3 Press the ⋁ button until Report/List is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

4 Press the ⋁ button until the report or list you want to print is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

   The selected report or list is printed.

Changing Setting Options

1 Press the ☰ (**Menu**) button.

2 Press the ⋁ button until System is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

3 Ensure that Defaults Settings is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

4 Press the ⋁ button until Fax Defaults is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

5 Press the ⋁ button until the desired menu item is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

6 Press the ⟩ or ⋁ button until the desired setting is highlighted or enter the value using the numeric keypad, and then press the ✔ button.

7 Repeat steps 5 and 6, as needed.

8 To return to the previous screen, press the ↩ (**Back**) button.

Know Your Printer

19

Understanding the Tool Box Menus

The Tool Box allows you to view or specify the system settings. You can also diagnose the system settings by using the Tool Box.

The Tool Box consists of the **Printer Settings Report**, **Printer Maintenance**, and **Diagnosis** tabs.

> ✍ **NOTE:** The **Password** dialog box appears the first time you try to change settings on **ToolBox** when **Panel Lock** is set on the printer. In this case, enter the password you specified, and click **OK** to apply the settings.

> ✍ **NOTE:** For how to start Tool Box, see "Understanding Your Printer Software (Windows Only)" on page 409.

Printer Settings Report

The **Printer Settings Report** tab contains the **Printer Information**, **Menu Settings**, **Reports**, **TCP/IP Settings**, **Tray Settings**, **Defaults Settings**, and **Fax Settings** pages.

> ✍ **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Printer Information

Purpose:

To display the information of your printer.

Values:

Dell Service Tag Number	Displays Dell's service tag number.
Express Service Code	Displays the express service code of the printer.
Printer Serial Number	Displays the serial number of the printer.
Printer Type	Displays the type of the printer. **Color Laser** is displayed normally.
Asset Tag Number	Displays the asset tag of the printer.
Memory Capacity	Displays the memory capacity.

Processor Speed	Displays the processing speed.	
Firmware Version	Displays the version of the controller.	
Network Firmware Version	Displays the NIC version.	
MCU Firmware Version	Displays the version of the Machine Control Unit (MCU) firmware.	
Printing Speed (Color)	Displays the speed for color printing.	
Printing Speed (Monochrome)	Displays the speed for monochrome printing.	

Menu Settings

Purpose:

To display the current settings of your printer.

Values:

System Settings	Sleep	Displays the time taken by the printer before it enters Sleep mode after it finishes a job.
	Deep Sleep	Displays the time taken by the printer before it enters Deep Sleep mode after it goes into Sleep mode.
	Auto Reset	Displays the time taken by the printer before it automatically resets the settings for Copy, Scan, or Fax on the operator panel to the defaults when no additional settings are made.
	Panel Select Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the operator panel input is correct. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Panel Alert Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the operator panel input is incorrect. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.

Job Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when a job is complete. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
Alert Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when a problem occurs. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
Out of Paper Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the printer runs out of paper. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
Auto Clear Alert Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted 5 seconds before the printer performs auto clear. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
All Tones	Displays the volume of all the alert tones. Off indicates that all the tones are disabled.
Job Time-Out	Displays the amount of time that the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer.
Fault Time-Out	Displays the time taken by the printer before it cancels jobs that stop abnormally.
Panel Language	Displays the language used on the operator panel.
Auto Log Print[1]	Displays whether to automatically print a job history report after every 20 jobs.
mm/inch	Displays the measurement unit used after the numeric value on the operator panel.

Date & Time	Date Format	Displays the default date format.
	Time Format	Displays the default time format; **24H** or **12H**.
	Time Zone	Displays the default time zone.
	Set Date	Displays the date setting.
	Set Time	Displays the time setting.
Paper Density	Plain	Displays the paper density of plain paper.
	Label	Displays the paper density of labels.
Adjust BTR	Plain	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller for plain paper.
	Plain Thick	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller for thick plain paper.
	Recycled	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller for recycled paper.
	Covers	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller for cover paper.
	Coated	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller for coated paper.
	Envelope	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller for envelopes.
	Label	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller for labels.

Adjust Fuser	Plain		Displays the temperature setting of the fuser for plain paper.
	Plain Thick		Displays the temperature setting of the fuser for thick plain paper.
	Recycled		Displays the temperature setting of the fuser for recycled paper.
	Covers		Displays the temperature setting of the fuser for cover paper.
	Coated		Displays the temperature setting of the fuser for coated paper.
	Envelope		Displays the temperature setting of the fuser for envelopes.
	Label		Displays the temperature setting of the fuser for labels.
Auto Registration Adjustment	Displays whether to automatically adjust color registration.		
Adjust Altitude	Displays the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.		
Non-Dell Toner	Displays whether to use toner cartridge of another manufacturer.		
BTR Refresh Mode	Displays whether to execute counter measures for curling/separating discharge of the paper.		
Web Link Customization	Select Reorder URL		Displays a link used for ordering consumables.
	Regular		Displays the regular web address (**http://accessories.us.dell.com/sna**).
	Premier		Displays the premier web address (**http://premier.dell.com**).

*1 If more than 20 jobs are in the queue, the job history may be cleared.

Reports

Purpose:

To print the settings and history information of your printer.

The reports are printed in the paper size specified in system settings. The default is A4 or Letter.

Values:

System Settings	Click to print a detailed list of the system settings.
Panel Settings	Click to print a detailed list of the panel settings.
Job History	Click to print the completed jobs history.
Error History	Click to print the error history.
Demo Page	Click to print the Demo Page.
Address Book List	Click to print the list of Personal Address, Fax Group, and E-mail Group stored as Address Book.

TCP/IP Settings

Purpose:

To display the current settings of TCP/IP (Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol) protocol.

Values:

IP Address Mode	Displays the method for acquiring the IP address.
IP Address	Displays the IP address of your printer.
Subnet Mask	Displays the subnet mask.
Gateway Address	Displays the gateway address.

Tray Settings

Purpose:

To display the paper size and type of paper loaded in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF).

Values:

Paper Type	Displays the paper type setting of the MPF.
Paper Size	Displays the paper size setting of the MPF.
Custom Size - Y	Displays the length of custom size paper loaded in the MPF.

Custom Size - X	Displays the width of custom size paper loaded in the MPF.
Display Popup	Displays whether to use a popup menu that prompts the user to set **Paper Type** and **Paper Size** when the paper is loaded in the MPF.

Defaults Settings

Purpose:

To display the default scan, fax, and copy settings of the printer.

Values:

Scan Defaults	Scan To Network	Displays whether to store scanned image on a network server or on a computer.
	File Format	Displays the file format to save the scanned image.
	Color	Displays whether to scan in color or in black and white.
	Resolution	Displays the default scan resolution.
	Document Size	Displays the default document size.
	Lighter/Darker	Displays the default scan density level.
	Sharpness	Displays the default sharpness level.
	Auto Exposure	Displays whether to suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the scanned image.
	Margin Top/Bottom	Displays the value of the top and bottom margins.
	Margin Left/Right	Displays the value of the left and right margins.
	Margin Middle	Displays the value of the middle margin.
	Image Compression	Displays the image compression level.
	Max E-Mail Size	Displays the maximum size of e-mail that can be sent.

Fax Defaults	**Resolution**	Displays the resolution level to be used for fax transmission.
	Lighter/Dark er	Displays the default density level to be used for fax transmission.
	Delayed Start	Displays the fax transmission start time.
Copy Defaults	**Color**	Displays whether to make copies in color or in black and white.
	Reduce/Enlar ge	Displays the default copy reduction/enlargement ratio.
	Original Type	Displays the default document type.
	Document Size	Displays the default document size.
	Lighter/Dark er	Displays the default copy density level.
	Sharpness	Displays the default sharpness level.
	Auto Exposure	Displays whether to suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.
	Color Balance (Red)	Displays the color balance level of red.
	Color Balance (Green)	Displays the color balance level of green.
	Color Balance (Blue)	Displays the color balance level of blue.
	Gray Balance	Displays the gray balance level.
	Multiple-Up	Displays whether to enable the Multiple-Up feature.
	Collated	Displays whether to sort the copy job.
	Margin Top/Bottom	Displays the value of the top and bottom margins.
	Margin Left/Right	Displays the value of the left and right margins.
	Margin Middle	Displays the value of the middle margin.

Fax Settings

Purpose:

To display the basic fax settings.

Values:

Receive Mode	Displays the fax receiving mode.
Auto Rec Fax	Displays the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call.
Auto Rec Fax/Tel	Displays the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call.
Auto Rec Ans/Fax	Displays the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call.
Line Monitor	Displays the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.
Ring Tone Volume	Displays the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when **Receive Mode** is set to **Telephone/Fax**.
Line Type	Displays the line type.
Tone/Pulse	Displays the dialing type.
Resend Delay	Displays the interval between transmission attempts.
Redial Attempts	Displays the number of redial attempts.
Redial Delay	Displays the interval between redial attempts.
Junk Fax Setup	Displays whether to reject faxes sent from unwanted numbers.
Remote Receive	Displays whether to receive faxes by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.
Remote Rcv Tone	Displays the remote receive code to start Remote Receive.
Fax Header	Displays whether to print the information of sender on the header of faxes.

Fax Header Name	Displays the name of sender to be printed on the header of faxes.
Fax Number	Displays the fax number to be printed on the header of faxes.
Fax Cover Page	Displays whether to attach a cover page to faxes.
DRPD Pattern	Displays the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) setting.
Sent Fax Fwd	Displays whether to forward incoming faxes to a specified destination.
Fax Fwd Number	Displays the fax number of the destination to which incoming faxes are to be forwarded.
Prefix Dial	Displays whether to set a prefix dial number.
Prefix Dial Num	Displays a prefix dial number. This number dials before any auto dial number is started.
Discard Size	Displays whether to discard text or images at the bottom of a fax page when the entire page does not fit onto the output paper.
ECM	Displays whether to enable the Error Correction Mode (ECM).
Modem Speed	Displays the fax modem speed when a fax transmission or reception error occurs.
Fax Activity	Displays whether to automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.
Fax Transmit	Displays whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission or only when an error occurs.
Fax Broadcast	Displays whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission to multiple destinations or only when an error occurs.
Fax Protocol	Displays whether to print a protocol monitor report after every fax transmission or only when an error occurs.
Country	Displays the country where the printer is used.

Printer Maintenance

The **Printer Maintenance** tab contains the **System Settings**, **Date & Time**, **Paper Density**, **Adjust BTR**, **Adjust Fuser,** **Registration Adjustment**, **Adjust Altitude**, **Reset Defaults**, **Non-Dell Toner**, **BTR Refresh Mode**, **Web Link Customization**, **TCP/IP Settings**, **Tray Settings**, **EWS**, **Scan Defaults**, **Fax Defaults**, **Copy Defaults**, and **Fax Settings** pages.

> **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

System Settings

Purpose:

To configure the power saving mode, auto clear time, warning tones, time-out time, operator panel language settings, job log auto print, and mm/inch setting.

Values:

Power Saver Timer	Sleep[*1]	**5 minutes***	Specifies the time taken by the printer before it enters Sleep mode after it finishes a job.
		5– 30 minutes	
	Deep Sleep	**6 minutes***	Specifies the time taken by the printer before it enters Deep Sleep mode after it goes into Sleep mode.
		1–6 minutes	
Auto Reset	**45 seconds***		Specifies the time taken by the printer before it automatically resets the settings for Copy, Scan, or Fax on the operator panel to the defaults when no additional settings are made.
	1 minute		
	2 minutes		
	3 minutes		
	4 minutes		
Alert Tone	Panel Select Tone	**Off***	Does not emit a tone when the operator panel input is correct.
		Low	Emits a tone at the specified volume when the operator panel input is correct.
		Medium	
		High	

Panel Alert Tone	**Off***	Does not emit a tone when the operator panel input is incorrect.
	Low	Emits a tone at the specified volume when the operator panel input is incorrect.
	Medium	
	High	
Job Tone	**Off**	Does not emit a tone when a job is complete.
	Low	Emits a tone at the specified volume when a job is complete.
	Medium*	
	High	
Alert Tone	**Off**	Does not emit a tone when a problem occurs.
	Low	Emits a tone at the specified volume when a problem occurs.
	Medium*	
	High	
Out of Paper Tone	**Off**	Does not emit a tone when the printer runs out of paper.
	Low	Emits a tone at the specified volume when the printer runs out of paper.
	Medium*	
	High	
Auto Clear Alert Tone	**Off***	Does not emit a tone before the printer performs auto clear.
	Low	Emits a tone at the specified volume 5 seconds before the printer performs auto clear.
	Medium	
	High	
All Tones	**Off**	Disables all the alert tones.
	Low	Specifies the volume of all the alert tones at once.
	Medium	
	High	

Job Time-Out	**0**	Disables the job time-out.
	30 seconds*	Specifies the amount of time that the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer. The print job is cancelled if it times out.
	5–300 seconds	
Fault Time-Out	**0**	Disables the fault time-out.
	60 seconds*	Specifies the time taken by the printer before it cancels jobs that stop abnormally. The print job is cancelled if it times out.
	3–300 seconds	
Panel Language	**English***	Specifies the language to be used on the operator panel.
	Français	
	Italiano	
	Deutsch	
	Español	
	Nederlands	
	Dansk	
	Norsk	
	Svenska	
Auto Log Print[*2]	**Off***	Does not automatically print a job history report.
	On	Automatically prints a job history report after every 20 jobs.
mm/inch[*3]	**millimeter (mm)**	Specifies the measurement unit displayed after the numeric value on the operator panel.
	inch (")	
Apply New Settings		After you complete the settings, press the **Apply New Settings** button to apply the changes.
Restart printer to apply new settings		Press the **Restart printer to apply new settings** button to apply the changes.

*1 Enter 5 in Sleep to put the printer in the Sleep mode five minutes after it finishes a job. This uses less energy, but requires more warm-up time for the printer. Enter 5 if your printer shares an electrical circuit with room lighting and you notice lights flickering. Select a high value if your printer is in constant use. In most circumstances, this keeps the printer ready to operate with minimum warm-up time. Select a value between 5 and 30 minutes for the power saver timer mode if you want a balance between energy consumption and a shorter warm-up period.
The printer automatically returns to the standby mode from the Sleep mode when it receives data from the computer. You can also return the printer to the standby mode by pressing any button on the operator panel.

*2 If more than 20 jobs are in the queue, the job history may be cleared.

*3 The default for **mm/inch** varies depending on country-specific factory default.

Date & Time

Purpose:

To set the date and time, and regional time zone of the printer.

Values:

Date Format	Specifies the date format; **yy/mm/dd, mm/dd/yy, or dd/mm/yy**.
Time Format	Specifies the time format; **24H** or **12H**.
Time Zone	Specifies the time zone.
Set Date	Specifies the current date.
Set Time	Specifies the current time.
Apply New Settings	After you complete the settings, press the **Apply New Settings** button to apply the changes.

Paper Density

Purpose:

To specify the paper density.

Values:

Plain	**Normal***	Specifies the paper density of plain paper.
	Light	

Label	Normal*	Specifies the paper density of labels.
	Light	
Apply New Settings		After you complete the settings, press the **Apply New Settings** button to apply the changes.

Adjust BTR

Purpose:

To specify the optimum voltage settings for printing for the transfer roller (BTR). To lower the voltage, set negative values. To increase, set positive values.

The default settings may not give the best output on all paper types. If you see mottles on the print output, try to increase the voltage. If you see white spots on the print output, try to decrease the voltage.

NOTE: The print quality changes depending on the values you select for this item.

Values:

Plain	0*
	-3 – +3
Plain Thick	0*
	-3 – +3
Recycled	0*
	-3 – +3
Covers	0*
	-3 – +3
Coated	0*
	-3 – +3
Envelope	0*
	-3 – +3
Label	0*
	-3 – +3
Apply New Settings	After you complete the settings, press the **Apply New Settings** button to apply the changes.

Adjust Fuser

Purpose:

To specify the optimum temperature settings for printing for the fuser. To lower the temperature, set negative values. To increase, set positive values.

The default settings may not give the best output on all paper types. When the printed paper has curled, try to lower the temperature. When the toner does not fuse on the paper properly, try to increase the temperature.

NOTE: The print quality changes depending on the values you select for this item.

Values:

Plain	0*
	-3 – +3
Plain Thick	0*
	-3 – +3
Recycled	0*
	-3 – +3
Covers	0*
	-3 – +3
Coated	0*
	-3 – +3
Envelope	0*
	-3 – +3
Label	0*
	-3 – +3
Apply New Settings	After you complete the settings, press the **Apply New Settings** button to apply the changes.

Registration Adjustment

Purpose:

To set **Color Registration Adjustment** (individual yellow, magenta, cyan correction) settings. When **Auto Registration Adjustment** is set to **On**, the printer prints the color registration chart and adjusts the color registration by

using the chart. Color registration adjustment need to be made during the initial setup of the printer or when the printer is moved to a different location.

Values:

Auto Registration Adjustment	On*		Automatically adjusts color registration.
	Off		Does not automatically adjust color registration.
Auto Correct[1]			Click **Start** to automatically correct color registration.
Print Color Regi Chart[1],[2]			Click **Start** to print a color registration chart.
Color Registration Adjustment 1 (Lateral)[1]	Yellow	0*	Specifies lateral (perpendicular to paper feed direction) color adjustment values individually.
		-5–+5	
	Magenta	0*	
		-5–+5	
	Cyan	0*	
		-5–+5	
Color Registration Adjustment 2 (Process)[1]	LY(Left Yellow)	0*	Specifies process (paper feed direction) color adjustment values individually.
		-5–+5	
	LM(Left Magenta)	0*	
		-5–+5	
	LC(Left Cyan)	0*	
		-5–+5	
	RY(Right Yellow)	0*	
		-5–+5	
	RM(Right Magenta)	0*	
		-5–+5	
	RC(Right Cyan)	0*	
		-5–+5	
Apply New Settings			After you complete the settings, press the **Apply New Settings** button to apply the changes.

*1 This item is available only when **Auto Registration Adjustment** is set to **Off**.

*2 The color registration chart prints a lattice pattern of yellow, magenta, and cyan lines. On the chart, find the values on the right side that are next to the line that is perfectly straight for each of the three colors. If the value for this line is 0, color registration is not needed. If the value for this line is any value other than 0, specify the adjustment values under **Color Registration Adjustment**.

Adjust Altitude

Purpose:

To specify the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.

The discharge phenomenon for charging the photo conductor varies with barometric pressure. Adjustments are performed by specifying the altitude of the location where the printer is being used.

NOTE: An incorrect altitude adjustment setting leads to poor printing quality, incorrect indication of remaining toner.

Values:

0 meter*	Specifies the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.
1000 meters	
2000 meters	
3000 meters	
Apply New Settings	After you complete the settings, press the **Apply New Settings** button to apply the changes.

Reset Defaults

Purpose:

To initialize NVM (non-volatile memory) for system parameters or Address Book data. After executing this function and rebooting the printer, the menu parameters or data are reset to their default values.

For details, see "Resetting Defaults" on page 357.

Values:

System Section	Click to initialize the system parameters.

User Fax Section	Click to initialize the fax number entries in the Address Book.
User Scan Section	Click to initialize the e-mail and server address entries in the Address Book.

Non-Dell Toner

Purpose:

To use toner cartridge of another manufacturer.

📝 **NOTE:** Using non-Dell-brand toner cartridges may make some printer features unusable, reduce print quality and decrease the reliability of your printer. Dell recommends only new Dell-brand toner cartridges for your printer. Dell does not provide warranty coverage for problems caused by using accessories, parts, or components not supplied by Dell.

📝 **NOTE:** Before you use toner cartridge of another manufacturer, be sure to restart the printer.

Values:

Non-Dell Toner	Off*	Does not use toner cartridge of another manufacturer.
	On	Uses toner cartridge of another manufacturer.
Apply New Settings		After you complete the settings, press the **Apply New Settings** button to apply the changes.

BTR Refresh Mode

Purpose:

To execute counter measures for curling/separating discharge of the paper.

Values:

BTR Refresh Mode	Off*	Does not automatically execute counter measures for curling/separating discharge of the paper.
	On	Automatically executes counter measures for curling/separating discharge of the paper.
Apply New Settings		After you complete the settings, press the **Apply New Settings** button to apply the changes.

Web Link Customization

Purpose:

To specify a link used for ordering consumables.

Values:

Select Reorder URL	Select the **Regular** or **Premier** URL.
Regular*	Displays the regular web address (**http://accessories.us.dell.com/sna**).
Premier	Displays the premier web address (**http://premier.dell.com**).
Apply New Settings	After you complete the settings, press the **Apply New Settings** button to apply the changes.

TCP/IP Settings

Purpose:

To configure TCP/IP settings.

Values:

IP Address Mode	AutoIP*	Automatically sets the IP address.
	BOOTP	Uses BOOTP to set the IP address.
	RARP	Uses RARP to set the IP address.
	DHCP	Uses DHCP to set the IP address.
	Panel	Manually sets the IP address.
IP Address		Manually sets the IP address allocated to the printer.
Subnet Mask		Manually sets the subnet mask.
Gateway Address		Manually sets the gateway address.
Apply New Settings		After you complete the settings, press the **Apply New Settings** button to apply the changes.
Restart printer to apply new settings		Press the **Restart printer to apply new settings** button to apply the changes.

Tray Settings

Purpose:

To specify the paper size and type of paper loaded in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF).

Values:

Paper Type	Plain*	Specifies the type of paper loaded in the MPF.
	Plain Thick	
	Covers	
	Coated	
	Label	
	Recycled	
	Envelope	
	Plain Side 2	
	Plain Thick Side 2	
	Covers Side 2	
	Coated Side 2	
	Recycled Side 2	

Paper Size	A4[*1]	Specifies the size of paper loaded in the MPF.
	A5	
	B5	
	Letter[*1]	
	Folio	
	Legal	
	Executive	
	Envelope #10	
	Monarch	
	Monarch Landscape	
	DL	
	DL Landscape	
	C5	
	Custom Size	
Custom Size - Y	297 mm*/11.7 inch*	Specifies the length of custom size paper.
	127–355 mm/5.0–14.0 inch	
Custom Size - X	210 mm*/8.3 inch*	Specifies the width of custom size paper.
	77–215 mm/3.0–8.5 inch	
Display Popup	On*	Displays a popup menu that prompts the user to set **Paper Type** and **Paper Size** when the paper is loaded in the MPF.
	Off	Does not display a popup menu.
Apply New Settings		After you complete the settings, press the **Apply New Settings** button to apply the changes.

The default for **Paper Size** varies depending on country-specific factory default.

EWS (Embedded Web Server or Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool)

Purpose:

To display the server settings of the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

NOTE: When the printer is connected to the USB port, this setting cannot be displayed.

Values:

Print Server Settings		Click **Display** to display the server settings for the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.
Display of EWS	**On***	Turns on the display of the server settings for the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.
	Off	Turns off the display of the server settings for the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.
Apply New Settings		After you complete the settings, press the **Apply New Settings** button to apply the changes.

Scan Defaults

Purpose:

To create your own default Scan settings.

Values:

Scan To Network	**Computer (Network)***	Stores the scanned image on a computer using the Server Message Block (SMB) protocol.
	Server (FTP)	Stores the scanned image on a server using the FTP protocol.
File Format	**TIFF**	Saves the scanned image in **TIFF**.
	PDF*	Saves the scanned image in **PDF**.
	JPEG	Saves the scanned image in **JPEG**.

Color	Black & White	Scans in black and white mode.
	GrayScale	Scan in grayscale mode.
	Color*	Scans in color mode.
	Color(Photo)	Scans in color mode. This is suitable for photographic images.
Resolution	200*	Scans an image at 200dpi.
	300	Scans an image at 300dpi.
	400	Scans an image at 400dpi.
	600	Scans an image at 600dpi.
Document Size	A4[*1]	Sets the document size to **A4**.
	A5	Sets the document size to **A5**.
	B5	Sets the document size to **B5**.
	Letter[*1]	Sets the document size to **Letter**.
	Folio	Sets the document size to **Folio**.
	Legal	Sets the document size to **Legal**.
	Executive	Sets the document size to **Executive**.
Lighter/Darker	Lighter 2	Makes the scanned image lighter than the original. Works well with dark print.
	Lighter 1	
	Normal*	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
	Darker 1	Makes the scanned image darker than the original. Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
	Darker 2	
Sharpness	Softest	Makes the scanned image softer than the original.
	Softer	
	Normal*	Does not make the scanned image sharper or softer than the original.
	Sharper	Makes the scanned image sharper than the original.
	Sharpest	
Auto Exposure	On*	Suppresses the background of the original to enhance text on the scanned image.
	Off	Does not suppress the background.

Margin Top/Bottom	2 mm*/0.1 inch*	Specifies the value of the top and bottom margins.
	0–50 mm/0.0–2.0 inch	
Margin Left/Right	2 mm*/0.1 inch*	Specifies the value of the left and right margins.
	0–50 mm/0.0–2.0 inch	
Margin Middle	0 mm*/0.0 inch*	Specifies the value of the middle margin.
	0–50 mm/0.0–2.0 inch	
Image Compression	High	Sets the image compression level to **High**.
	Medium*	Sets the image compression level to **Medium**.
	Low	Sets the image compression level to **Low**.
Max E-Mail Size		Sets the maximum size of e-mail that can be sent, within the range of 50 K bytes to 16384 K bytes. The default is 2048 K bytes.
Apply New Settings		After you complete the settings, press the **Apply New Settings** button to apply the changes.

*1   The default for **Document Size** varies depending on country-specific factory default.

Fax Defaults

Purpose:

To create your own default Fax settings.

Values:

Resolution	Standard*	Suitable for documents with normal sized characters.
	Fine	Suitable for documents containing small characters or thin lines or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.
	Super Fine	Suitable for documents containing extremely fine detail. The super fine mode is enabled only if the remote machine also supports the **Super Fine** resolution.
	Ultra Fine	Suitable for documents containing photographic images.
Lighter/Darker	Lighter 2	Makes the fax lighter than the original. Works well with dark print.
	Lighter 1	
	Normal*	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
	Darker 1	Makes the fax darker than the original. Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
	Darker 2	
Delayed Start	21:00*	Sets the fax transmission start time when sending a fax at a specified time.
	00:00–23:59	
Apply New Settings		After you complete the settings, press the **Apply New Settings** button to apply the changes.
Restart printer to apply new settings		Press the **Restart printer to apply new settings** button to apply the changes.

Copy Defaults

Purpose:

To create your own default Copy settings.

Values:

Color	Black & White	Prints in black and white mode.
	Color*	Prints in color mode.

Reduce/ Enlarge	mm series	Custom	Sets the default reduction/enlargement ratio to the custom size.
		200%	Sets the default enlargement ratio when you set the default measurement unit to millimeter.
		A5→A4 (141%)	
		A5→B5 (122%)	
		100%	Does not enlarge or reduce the size of a copied image.
		B5→A5 (81%)	Sets the default reduction ratio when you set the default measurement unit to millimeter.
		A4→A5 (70%)	
		50%	
	inch series	200%	Sets the default enlargement ratio when you set the default measurement unit to inch.
		Statement→ Legal (154%)	
		Statement→ Letter (129%)	
		100%	Does not enlarge or reduce the size of a copied image.
		Legal→Letter (78%)	Sets the default reduction ratio when you set the default measurement unit to inch.
		Ledger→ Letter (64%)	
		50%	
Custom Reduce/ Enlarge		100%*	Reduces or enlarges the image to the custom size when **Reduce/Enlarge** is set to **Custom**.
		25–400%	
Original Type		**Text**	Suitable for documents with text.
		Text & Photo*	Suitable for documents with both text and photos/gray tones.
		Photo	Suitable for documents with photos.

Document Size	A4[*1]	Sets the document size to **A4**.
	A5	Sets the document size to **A5**.
	B5	Sets the document size to **B5**.
	Letter[*1]	Sets the document size to **Letter**.
	Folio	Sets the document size to **Folio**.
	Legal	Sets the document size to **Legal**.
	Executive	Sets the document size to **Executive**.
Lighter/Darker	Lighter 2	Makes the copy lighter than the original. Works well with dark print.
	Lighter 1	
	Normal*	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
	Darker 1	Makes the copy darker than the original. Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
	Darker 2	
Sharpness	Softest	Makes the copy softer than the original.
	Softer	
	Normal*	Does not make the copy sharper or softer than the original.
	Sharper	Makes the copy sharper than the original.
	Sharpest	
Auto Exposure	On*	Suppresses the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.
	Off	Does not suppress the background.
Color Balance (Red)	0*	Sets the color balance level of red.
	-2– 2	
Color Balance (Green)	0*	Sets the color balance level of green.
	-2– 2	
Color Balance (Blue)	0*	Sets the color balance level of blue.
	-2– 2	
Gray Balance	0*	Sets the gray balance level.
	-2– 2	

Multiple-Up	Off*	Does not perform multiple-up printing.
	Auto	Automatically reduces the original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.
	ID Copy	Prints the original pages onto one sheet of paper in the original size.
	Manual	Prints the original pages onto the one sheet of paper in the size specified in **Reduce/Enlarge**.
Collated	Uncollated*	Does not sort the copy job.
	Collated	Sorts the copy job.
	Auto	Automatically determines which output mode for the copy job.
Margin Top/Bottom	4 mm*/0.2 inch*	Specifies the value of the top and bottom margins.
	0-50 mm/0.0-2.0 inch	
Margin Left/Right	4 mm*/0.2 inch*	Specifies the value of the left and right margins.
	0-50 mm/0.0-2.0 inch	
Margin Middle	0 mm*/0.0 inch*	Specifies the value of the middle margin.
	0-50 mm/0.0-2.0 inch	
Apply New Settings		After you complete the settings, press the **Apply New Settings** button to apply the changes.

*1   The default for **Document Size** varies depending on country-specific factory default.

Fax Settings

Purpose:

To configure the basic fax settings.

Values:

Receive Mode	**Telephone**	Automatic fax reception is turned off. You can receive a fax by picking up the handset of the external telephone, pressing the remote receive code, and then pressing ▶.
	Fax*	Automatically receives faxes.
	Telephone/Fax	When the printer receives an incoming fax, the external telephone rings for the time specified in **Auto Rec Fax/Tel**, and then the printer automatically receives a fax. If an incoming call is not a fax, the printer beeps from the internal speaker indicating that the call is a telephone call.
	Ans Machine/Fax	The printer can share a telephone line with an answering machine. In this mode, the printer will monitor the fax signal and pick up the line if there are fax tones. If the phone communication is using serial transmission in your country (such as Germany, Sweden, Denmark, Austria, Belgium, Italy, France and Switzerland), this mode is not supported.
	DRPD	Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) option, a distinctive ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. After the telephone company has provided a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern, configure the fax setup to monitor for that specific ring pattern.
Auto Rec Fax	**0***	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call.
	0–255	
Auto Rec Fax/Tel	**6***	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call.
	0–255	
Auto Rec Ans/Fax	**21***	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call.
	0–255	

Line Monitor	**Off**	Turns off the volume of the line monitor.
	Low	Specifies the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.
	Medium*	
	High	
Ring Tone Volume	**Off**	Turns off the volume of the ring tone.
	Low	Specifies the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when **Receive Mode** is set to **Telephone/Fax**.
	Medium	
	High*	
Line Type	**PSTN***	Sets the line type to PSTN.
	PBX	Sets the line type to PBX.
Tone/Pulse	**Tone***	Sets the dialing type to Tone.
	Pulse(10PPS)	Sets the dialing type to Pulse (10 pulse per second).
	Pulse(20PPS)	Sets the dialing type to Pulse (20 pulse per second).
Resend Delay	**8***	Specifies the interval between transmission attempts.
	3–255	
Redial Attempts	**3***	Specifies the number of redial attempts to make when the destination fax number is busy. If you enter 0, the printer will not redial.
	0–9	
Redial Delay	**1***	Specifies the interval between redial attempts.
	1–15	
Junk Fax Setup	**Off***	Does not reject faxes sent from unwanted numbers.
	On	Rejects faxes sent from unwanted numbers by accepting faxes only from the fax numbers registered in the Phone Book.
Remote Receive	**Off***	Disables the remote receive feature.
	On	Receives a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone after picking up the handset of the telephone.
Remote Rcv Tone	**00***	Specifies the remote receive code in two digits to start Remote Receive.
	00–99	

Fax Header	On*	Prints the information of sender on the header of faxes.
	Off	Does not print the information of sender on the header of faxes.
Fax Header Name		Sets the name of sender to be printed on the header of faxes. Up to 30 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
Fax Number		Sets the fax number of the printer to be printed on the header of faxes.
Fax Cover Page	Off*	Does not attach a cover page to faxes.
	On	Attaches a cover page to faxes.
DRPD Pattern	Pattern 4*	Provides a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern.
	Pattern 1–7	
Sent Fax Fwd	Off*	Does not forward incoming faxes.
	Forward	Always forwards incoming faxes to a specified destination.
	Print and Forward	Always forwards incoming faxes to a specified destination and prints all forwarded incoming faxes.
Fax Fwd Number		Specifies the fax number of the destination to which incoming faxes will be forwarded.
Prefix Dial	Off*	Does not set a prefix dial number.
	On	Sets a prefix dial number.
Prefix Dial Num		Sets a prefix dial number of up to five digits. This number dials before any auto dial number is started. It is useful for accessing the Private Automatic Branch Exchange (PABX).
Discard Size	Off	Prints any excess at the bottom of a fax page without discarding it.
	On	Discards any excess at the bottom of a fax page.
	Auto Reduction*	Automatically reduces a fax page to fit it onto the output paper.
ECM	On*	Enables the ECM. To use the ECM, the remote machines must also support the ECM.
	Off	Disables the ECM.

Modem Speed	2.4	Specifies the fax modem speed when a fax transmission or reception error occurs.
	4.8	
	9.6	
	14.4	
	33.6*	
Fax Activity	Auto Print*	Automatically prints a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.
	No Auto Print	Does not automatically print a fax activity report.
Fax Transmit	Print Disable	Does not print a transmission report after a fax transmission.
	Print On Error*	Prints a transmission report only when an error occurs.
	Print Always	Prints a transmission report after every fax transmission.
Fax Broadcast	Print Disable	Does not print a transmission report after a fax transmission to multiple destinations.
	Print On Error	Prints a transmission report only when an error occurs.
	Print Always*	Prints a transmission report after every fax transmission to multiple destinations.
Fax Protocol	Print Disable*	Does not print a protocol monitor report.
	Print On Error	Prints a protocol monitor report only when an error occurs.
	Print Always	Prints a protocol monitor report after every fax transmission.
Country		Selects the country where the printer is used.
Apply New Settings		After you complete the settings, press the **Apply New Settings** button to apply the changes.
Restart printer to apply new settings		Press the **Restart printer to apply new settings** button to apply the changes.

Diagnosis

The **Diagnosis** tab contains the **Chart Print**, **Environment Sensor Info**, **Clean Developer**, and **Refresh Mode** pages.

📝 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Chart Print

Purpose:

To print various charts that can be used for diagnosing your printer.

Values:

Pitch Configuration Chart	Click to print full halftone pages for yellow, magenta, cyan, and black. Also outputs pages to check the pitch.
Ghost Configuration Chart	Click to print a chart to check for ghost printing.
4 Colors Configuration Chart	Click to print bands of yellow, magenta, cyan, and black with varying density.
MQ Chart	Click to print charts to check for the binding.
Alignment Chart	Click to print a chart, and then check for proper alignment of the print image on the paper.
PHD Refresh Configuration Chart	Click to print a chart to check the light fatigue of the PHD unit.

Environment Sensor Info

Purpose:

To output the internal environment sensor information of the printer to **Result** by pressing the **Get Environment Sensor Info** button.

Clean Developer

Purpose:

To rotate the developer motor and stir the toner in the toner cartridge.

Values:

Clean Developer	Click **Start** to stir the toner.

Refresh Mode

Purpose:

To use up a toner cartridge when you need to replace it before the end of its life, or to stir the toner in a new toner cartridge.

> **NOTE:** Using the Refresh Mode consumes extra toner.

Values:

Toner Refresh Mode	Yellow	Click to clean the toner in the yellow toner cartridge.
	Magenta	Click to clean the toner in the magenta toner cartridge.
	Cyan	Click to clean the toner in the cyan toner cartridge.
	Black	Click to clean the toner in the black toner cartridge.

Resetting Defaults

After executing this function and rebooting the printer, the menu parameters or data are reset to their default values.

> **NOTE:**

1   Click **Start**→ **All Programs**→ **Dell Printers**→ **Dell 1355 Multifunction Color Printer**→ **Tool Box**.

> **NOTE:** When multiple printer drivers are installed on your computer, the **Select Printer** window appears. In this case, click the name of this printer listed in **Printer Name**, and then click **OK**.

The **Tool Box** opens.

2   Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.

3   Select **Reset Defaults** from the list at the left side of the page.

The **Reset Defaults** page is displayed.

4   Select the desired option button.

The printer restarts automatically to apply the settings.

20

Understanding the Printer Menus

When your printer is configured as a network printer available to a number of users, the access to the `Admin Menu` menus can be limited. This prevents unauthorized users from using the operator panel to inadvertently change the default menu settings that has been set by the administrator. However, you can use select settings for individual print jobs using the printer driver. Print settings selected from the printer driver have precedence over the default menu settings selected from the operator panel.

Defaults Settings

Use the `Defaults Settings` menu to configure the default copy, scan, and fax settings of the printer.

Copy Defaults

Use the `Copy Defaults` menus to configure a variety of copy features.

📝 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Color

Purpose:

To set whether to make copies in color or in black and white.

Values:

Black & White	Prints in black and white mode.
Color*	Prints in color mode.

Collated

Purpose:

To sort the copy job.

Values:

Uncollated*	Does not sort the copy job.
Collated	Sorts the copy job.
Auto	Automatically determines which output mode for the copy job.

Reduce/Enlarge

Purpose:

To set the default copy reduction/enlargement ratio.

Values:

mm series

200%
A5→A4 (141%)
A5→B5 (122%)
100%*
B5→A5 (81%)
A4→A5 (70%)
50%

inch series

200%
Stmt→Lgl (154%)
Stmt→Ltr (129%)
100%*
Lgl→Ltr (78%)
Ldgr→Ltr (64%)
50%

📝 **NOTE:** You can also use the numeric keypad to input the desired zoom ratio from 25% to 400%, or press > to enlarge the zoom ratio or press < to reduce the zoom ratio in 1% intervals.

📝 **NOTE:** This item is available only when `Multiple-Up` is set to `Off` or `Manual`.

Document Size

Purpose:

To specify the default document size.

Values:

A4 (210 x 297 mm)[*1]
A5 (148 x 210 mm)
B5 (182 x 257 mm)
Letter (8.5 x 11")[*1]
Folio (8.5 x 13")
Legal (8.5 x 14")
Executive (7.25 x 10.5")

[*1] The default for Document Size varies depending on country-specific factory default.

Original Type

Purpose:

To select the copy image quality.

Values:

Text	Suitable for documents with text.
Text & Photo*	Suitable for documents with both text and photos/gray tones.
Photo	Suitable for documents with photos.

Lighter/Darker

Purpose:

To set the default copy density level.

Values:

Lighter2	Makes the copy lighter than the original. Works well with dark print.
Lighter1	
Normal*	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
Darker1	Makes the copy darker than the original. Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
Darker2	

Sharpness

Purpose:

To set the default sharpness level.

Values:

Sharpest	Makes the copy sharper than the original.
Sharper	
Normal*	Does not make the copy sharper or softer than the original.
Softer	Makes the copy softer than the original.
Softest	

Auto Exposure

Purpose:

To suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.

Values:

Off	Does not suppress the background.
On*	Suppresses the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.

Color Balance R

Purpose:

To specify the default color balance level of red within the range of -2 to +2.

Color Balance G

Purpose:

To specify the default color balance level of green within the range of -2 to +2.

Color Balance B

Purpose:

To specify the default color balance level of blue within the range of -2 to +2.

Gray Balance

Purpose:

To specify the default gray balance level within the range of -2 to +2.

Multiple-Up

Purpose:

To print two original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.

Values:

Off*	Does not perform multiple-up printing.
Auto	Automatically reduces the original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.
ID Copy	Prints the original pages onto one sheet of paper in the original size.
Manual	Prints the original pages onto the one sheet of paper in the size specified in `Reduce/Enlarge`.

Margin Top/Bottom

Purpose:

To specify the value of the top and bottom margins.

Values:

4 mm*/0.2 inch*	Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.
0-50 mm/0.0-2.0 inch	

Margin Left/Right

Purpose:

To specify the value of the left and right margins.

Values:

4 mm*/0.2 inch*	Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.
0-50 mm/0.0-2.0 inch	

Margin Middle

Purpose:

To specify the value of the middle margin.

Values:

0 mm*/0.0 inch*	Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.
0-50 mm/0.0-2.0 inch	

Scan Defaults

Use the Scan Defaults menus to configure a variety of scanner features.

📝 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Scan to Network

Purpose:

To store the scanned image on a network server or on a computer.

Values:

Network (Computer)*	Stores the scanned image on a computer using the Server Message Block (SMB) protocol.
Network (Server)	Stores the scanned image on a server using the FTP protocol.

File Format

Purpose:

To specify the file format to save the scanned image.

Values:

PDF*
TIFF
JPEG

Color

Purpose:

To set whether to scan in color or in black and white.

Values:

Black & White	Scans in black and white mode.
Color*	Scans in color mode.

Color Button Set

Purpose:

To assign color mode to the color mode switch button.

Values:

B&W Button	Black & White*	Scans in black and white when `Black & White` is selected for a color mode.
	Grayscale	Scans in gray scale when `Black & White` is selected for a color mode.
Color Button	Color*	Scans in color when `Color` is selected for a color mode.
	Color (Photo)	Scans in color (Photo) when `Color` is selected for a color mode. This is suitable for photographic images.

Resolution

Purpose:

To specify the default scan resolution.

Values:

200 x 200 dpi*
300 x 300 dpi
400 x 400 dpi
600 x 600 dpi

Document Size

Purpose:

To specify the default document size.

Values:

A4 (210 x 297 mm)[*1]
A5 (148 x 210 mm)
B5 (182 x 257 mm)
Letter (8.5 x 11")[*1]
Folio (8.5 x 13")

Legal (8.5 x 14")	
Executive (7.25 x 10.5")	

*1   The default for Document Size varies depending on country-specific factory default.

Lighter/Darker

Purpose:

To set the default scan density level.

Values:

Lighter2 **Lighter1**	Makes the scanned image lighter than the original. Works well with dark print.
Normal*	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
Darker1 **Darker2**	Makes the scanned image darker than the original. Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.

Sharpness

Purpose:

To set the default sharpness level.

Values:

Sharpest **Sharper**	Makes the scanned image sharper than the original.
Normal*	Does not make the scanned image sharper or softer than the original.
Softer **Softest**	Makes the scanned image softer than the original.

Auto Exposure

Purpose:

To suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the scanned image.

Values:

Off	Does not suppress the background.
On*	Suppresses the background of the original to enhance text on the scanned image.

Margin Top/Bottom

Purpose:

To specify the value of the top and bottom margins.

Values:

2 mm*/0.1 inch*	Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.
0-50 mm/0.0-2.0 inch	

Margin Left/Right

Purpose:

To specify the value of the left and right margins.

Values:

2 mm*/0.1 inch*	Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.
0-50 mm/0.0-2.0 inch	

Margin Middle

Purpose:

To specify the value of the middle margin.

Values:

0 mm*/0.0 inch*	Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.
0-50 mm/0.0-2.0 inch	

Image Compression

Purpose:

To specify the image compression level.

Values:

High	Sets the image compression level to `High`.
Medium*	Sets the image compression level to `Medium`.
Low	Sets the image compression level to `Low`.

Max EMail Size

Purpose:

To specify the maximum size of e-mail that can be sent, within the range of 50 K bytes to 16384 K bytes. The default is 2048 K bytes.

Fax Defaults

Use the `Fax Defaults` menus to configure a variety of fax features.

NOTE: The FAX service cannot be used unless you set up a country code under `Country`. If `Country` is not set up, a message `Set The Country Code` appears on the display.

NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Resolution

Purpose:

To specify the resolution level to be used for fax transmission.

Values:

Standard*	Suitable for documents with normal sized characters.

Fine	Suitable for documents containing small characters or thin lines or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.
Super Fine	Suitable for documents containing extremely fine detail. The `Super Fine` mode is enabled only if the remote machine also supports the super fine resolution. See the notes below.
Ultra Fine	Suitable for documents containing photographic images.

📝 **NOTE:** Faxes scanned in the `Super Fine` mode transmit at the highest resolution supported by the receiving device.

Original Type

Purpose:

To select the default document type.

Values:

Text*	Suitable for documents with text.
Photo	Suitable for documents with photos.

Lighter/Darker

Purpose:

To set the default copy density level.

Values:

Lighter2	Makes the fax lighter than the original. Works well with dark print.
Lighter1	
Normal*	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
Darker1	Makes the fax darker than the original. Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
Darker2	

Delayed Start

Purpose:

This feature enables you to set a specific time for the fax transmission to start. Once Delayed Start mode is activated, your printer stores all of the documents to be faxed into its memory and sends them at the specified time. After faxing in the Delayed Start mode is complete, the data in the memory is cleared.

Values:

21:00*/PM9:00*	Specify the fax transmission start time when sending a fax at a specified time.
0:00 - 23:59 / AM/PM1:00 - 12:59	

📝 **NOTE:** A maximum of 19 delayed fax jobs can be stored in this printer.

USB Print Defaults

Layout

Purpose:

To automatically enlarge print documents when you print directly from a USB storage device.

Values:

Auto*	Automatically enlarges print documents to fit on the paper.
Off	Does not enlarge print documents.

Tray Settings

Use the Tray Settings menu to set the paper size and type of paper loaded in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF).

📝 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

MPF

Purpose:

To specify the paper loaded in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF).

Values:

Paper Size	A4 (210 x 297 mm)[*1]			
	A5 (148 x 210 mm)			
	B5 (182 x 257 mm)			
	Letter (8.5 x 11")[*1]			
	Folio (8.5 x 13")			
	Legal (8.5 x 14")			
	Executive (7.25 x 10.5")			
	Envelope #10 (4.1 x 9.5")			
	Monarch Env. (3.9 x 7.5")			
	Monarch Env. L (7.5 x 3.9")			
	DL Env. (110 x 220 mm)			
	DL Env. L (220 x 110 mm)			
	C5 Envelope (162 x 229 mm)			
	Custom Size	Portrait (Y)	297 mm[*]/11.7inch[*]	Specifies the length of the custom size paper.
			127 - 355 mm/5.0-14.0 inches	
		Landscape(X)	210 mm[*]/8.3 inch[*]	Specifies the width of the custom size paper.
			77 - 215 mm/3.0-8.5 inches	

Paper Type	Plain*	
	Plain Thick	
	Covers	
	Coated	
	Label	
	Recycled	
	Envelope	
	Plain S2	
	Plain Thick S2	
	Covers S2	
	Coated S2	
	Recycled S2	
Display Popup	Off	Does not display a popup menu.
	On*	Displays a popup menu that prompts the user to set Paper Size and Paper Type when the paper is loaded in the MPF.

*1 The default for Paper Size varies depending on country-specific factory default.

📓 **NOTE:** For more information on supported paper sizes, see "Supported Paper Sizes" on page 196.

Reports/List

Use the Reports/List menu to print various types of reports and lists.

System Settings

Purpose:

To print a list of the information such as the printer name, service tag, the status of the printer, consumables, and the network settings.

Panel Settings

Purpose:

To print a detailed list of all the settings on the operator panel menus.

Job History

Purpose:

To print a detailed list of the print, copy, fax, or scan jobs that have been processed. This list contains the last 20 jobs.

Error History

Purpose:

To print a detailed list of paper jams and fatal errors.

Color Test Page

Purpose:

To print a page for testing colors.

Protocol Monitor

Purpose:

To print a detailed list of monitored protocols.

Address Book

Purpose:

To print the list of all addresses stored as Address Book information.

Fax Activity

Purpose:

To print the report of faxes you recently received or sent.

Admin Menu

Use the `Admin Menu` menu to configure a variety of printer features.

> **NOTE:** A Password is required to enter the `Admin Menu` menu when `Panel Lock Set` is set to `Enable`. In this case, enter the password you specified, and press the ✔ button.

Phone Book

Use the `Phone Book` menu to configure the speed dial and group dial settings.

Speed Dial

Purpose:

To store up to 99 frequently dialed numbers in speed dial locations.

See also:

"Storing a Number for Speed Dialing" on page 311.

Group Dial

Purpose:

To create a group of fax destinations and register it under a two-digit dial code. Up to 6 group dial codes can be registered.

See also:

"Setting Group Dial" on page 314.

Network

Use the `Network` menu to change the printer settings affecting jobs sent to the printer through the wired or wireless network.

> **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Ethernet

Purpose:

To specify the communication speed and the duplex settings of Ethernet. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on.

Values:

Auto*	Detects the Ethernet settings automatically.
10BASE-T Half	Uses 10base-T half-duplex.
10BASE-T Full	Uses 10base-T full-duplex.

100BASE-TX Half	Uses 100base-TX half-duplex.
100BASE-TX Full	Uses 100base-TX full-duplex.

NOTE: This item is displayed only when the printer is connected with a wired network.

Status (Dell 1355cnw Multifunction Color Printer only)

Purpose:

To display the information on the wireless signal strength. No changes can be made on the operator panel to improve the status of the wireless connection.

Values:

Good	Indicates good signal strength.
Acceptable	Indicates marginal signal strength.
Low	Indicates insufficient signal strength.
No Reception	Indicates that no signal is received.

NOTE: This item is displayed only when the printer is connected with a wireless network.

Wireless Setup (Dell 1355cnw Multifunction Color Printer only)

Purpose:

To configure the wireless network interface.

Values:

Manual Setup	Enter Network (SSID)	Specify a name to identify the wireless network. Up to 32 alphanumeric characters can be entered.		
	Infrastructure	Select when you configure the wireless setting through the access point such as a wireless router.		
		No Security	Specify **No Security** to configure the wireless setting without specifying a security method from WEP, WPA-PSK-TKIP, and WPA-PSK-AES.	
		WEP (64Bit)	Specify the WEP 64bit Key to use through the wireless network. Up to 10 hexadecimal characters can be entered.	
			Transmit Key	Specify the transmit key from **WEP Key 1**, **WEP Key 2**, **WEP Key 3**, and **WEP Key 4**.
		WEP (128Bit)	Specify the WEP 128bit Key to use through the wireless network. Up to 26 hexadecimal characters can be entered.	
			Transmit Key	Specify the transmit key from **WEP Key 1**, **WEP Key 2**, **WEP Key 3**, and **WEP Key 4**.

	WPA-PSK-TKIP	Select to configure the wireless setting with the security method of WPA-PSK-TKIP.	
		Pass Phrase Entry	Specify the passphrase of alphanumeric characters from 8 to 63 only when WPA-PSK-TKIP is selected for **Encryption**.
	WPA2-PSK-AES	Select to configure the wireless setting with the security method of WPA2-PSK-AES.	
		Pass Phrase Entry	Specify the passphrase of alphanumeric characters from 8 to 63 only when WPA-PSK-AES is selected for **Encryption**.
Ad-hoc	Select to configure the wireless setting without the access point such as a wireless router.		
	No Security	Specify **No Security** to configure the wireless setting without specifying the security method from WEP.	
	WEP (64Bit)	Specify the WEP 64bit Key to use through the wireless network. Up to 10 hexadecimal characters can be entered.	
		Transmit Key	Specify the transmit key from **WEP Key 1**, **WEP Key 2**, **WEP Key 3**, and **WEP Key 4**.
	WEP (128Bit)	Specify the WEP 128bit Key to use through the wireless network. Up to 26 hexadecimal characters can be entered.	
		Transmit Key	Specify the transmit key from **WEP Key 1**, **WEP Key 2**, **WEP Key 3**, and **WEP Key 4**.

WPS	Push Button Control	PBC Start	No*	Disables the security method of WPS-PBC.
			Yes	Configures the wireless setting with the security method of WPS-PBC.
	PIN Code	Start Configuration	Configures the wireless setting using the PIN code assigned automatically by the printer.	
		Print PIN Code	Prints the PIN code. Confirm it when you enter the PIN code to your computer.	

📝 **NOTE:** This item is displayed only when the printer is connected with a wireless network.

Reset Wireless (Dell 1355cnw Multifunction Color Printer only)

Purpose:

To initialize wireless network settings. After executing this function and rebooting the printer, all wireless network settings are reset to their default values.

No*	Does not reset the wireless setting.
Yes	Resets the wireless setting.

📝 **NOTE:** This item is displayed only when the printer is connected with a wireless network.

TCP/IP

Purpose:

To configure TCP/IP settings. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on.

Values:

IP Mode	Dual Stack*	Uses both IPv4 and IPv6 to set the IP address.
	IPv4 Mode	Uses IPv4 to set the IP address.

IPv4	Get IP Address	AutoIP*	Automatically sets the IP address.
		BOOTP	Uses BOOTP to set the IP address.
		RARP	Uses RARP to set the IP address.
		DHCP	Uses DHCP to set the IP address.
		Panel	Enables the IP address entered on the operator panel.
	IP Address		Manually sets the IP address allocated to the printer.
	Subnet Mask		Manually sets the subnet mask.
	Gateway Address		Manually sets the gateway address.

Protocol

Purpose:

To enable or disable each protocol. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on.

Values:

LPD	Disable	Disables the LPD port.
	Enable*	Enables the Line Printer Daemon (LPD) port.
Port9100	Disable	Disables the Port9100 port.
	Enable*	Enables the Port9100 port.
WSD	Disable	Disables the WSD port.
	Enable*	Enables the WSD port.
SNMP	Disable	Disables the SNMP UDP port.
	Enable*	Enables the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) UDP port.
E-Mail Alerts	Disable	Disables the E-Mail Alert feature.
	Enable*	Enables the E-Mail Alert feature.
EWS	Disable	Disables an access to **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** embedded in the printer.
	Enable*	Enables an access to **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** embedded in the printer.

LLTD	Disable	Disables the LLTD.
	Enable*	Enables the LLTD.
Bonjour (mDNS)	Disable	Disables the Bonjour (mDNS).
	Enable*	Enables the Bonjour (mDNS).

Initialize NVM

Purpose:

To initialize wired network data stored in NVM (non-volatile memory). After executing this function and rebooting the printer, all wired network settings are reset to their default values.

No*	Does not initialize the wired network data stored in NVM.
Yes	Initializes the wired network data stored in NVM.

Fax Settings

Use the `Fax Settings` menu to configure the basic fax settings.

📝 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Receive Mode

Purpose:

To select the default fax receiving mode.

Values:

TEL Mode	Automatic fax reception is turned off. You can receive a fax by picking up the handset of the external telephone, pressing the remote receive code, and then pressing ▷.
FAX Mode	Automatically receives faxes.
TEL/FAX Mode	When the printer receives an incoming fax, the external telephone rings for the time specified in `Auto Rec TEL/FAX`, and then the printer automatically receives a fax. If an incoming call is not a fax, the printer beeps from the internal speaker indicating that the call is a telephone call.

Ans/FAX Mode	The printer can share a telephone line with an answering machine. In this mode, the printer will monitor the fax signal and pick up the line if there are fax tones. If the phone communication is using serial transmission in your country (such as Germany, Sweden, Denmark, Austria, Belgium, Italy, France and Switzerland), this mode is not supported.
DRPD Mode	Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) option, a distinctive ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. After the telephone company has provided a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern, configure the fax setup to monitor for that specific ring pattern.

Auto Rec Fax

Purpose:

To set the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call. The interval can be specified within the range of 0 to 255 seconds. The default is 0 second.

Auto Rec TEL/FAX

Purpose:

To set the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call. The interval can be specified within the range of 0 to 255 seconds. The default is 6 seconds.

Auto Rec Ans/FAX

Purpose:

To set the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call. The interval can be specified within the range of 0 to 255 seconds. The default is 21 seconds.

Line Monitor

Purpose:

To set the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.

Values:

Off	Turns off the volume of the line monitor.
Low	Sets the volume of the line monitor.
Medium*	
High	

Ring Tone Volume

Purpose:

To set the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when Receive Mode is set to Telephone/Fax.

Values:

Off	Turns off the volume of the ring tone.
Low	Sets the volume of the ring tone.
Medium	
High*	

Line Type

Purpose:

To select the line type.

Values:

PSTN*	Sets the line type to PSTN.
PBX	Sets the line type to PBX.

Tone/Pulse

Purpose:

To select the dialing type.

Values:

Tone*	Sets the dialing type to `Tone`.
Pulse(10PPS)	Sets the dialing type to Pulse (10 pulse per second).
Pulse(20PPS)	Sets the dialing type to Pulse (20 pulse per second).

Resend Delay

Purpose:

To specify the interval between transmission attempts within the range of 3 to 255 seconds. The default is 8 seconds.

Redial Attempts

Purpose:

To specify the number of redial attempts to make when the destination fax number is busy, within the range of 0 to 9. If you enter 0, the printer will not redial. The default is 3.

Redial Delay

Purpose:

To specify the interval between redial attempts within the range of 1 to 15 minutes. The default is 1 minute.

Junk Fax Setup

Purpose:

To reject faxes sent from unwanted numbers by accepting faxes only from the fax numbers registered in the Phone Book.

Off*	Does not reject faxes sent from unwanted numbers.
On	Rejects faxes sent from unwanted numbers.

NOTE: Ensure to specify `Fax Number` before using `Junk Fax Setup`.

Remote Receive

Purpose:

To receive a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone after picking up the handset of the telephone.

Values:

Off*	Does not receive a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.
On	Receives a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.

Remote Rcv Tone

Purpose:

To specify the remote receive code in two digits to start Remote Receive.

Fax Header

Purpose:

To print the information of sender on the header of faxes.

Values:

Off	Does not print the information of sender on the header of faxes.
On*	Prints the information of sender on the header of faxes.

Company Name

Purpose:

To set the name of sender to be printed on the header of faxes. Up to 30 alphanumeric characters can be entered.

Fax Number

Purpose:

To set the fax number of the printer to be printed on the header of faxes.

Fax Cover Page

Purpose:

To set whether to attach a cover page to faxes.

Values:

Off*	Does not attach a cover page to faxes.
On	Attaches a cover page to faxes.

DRPD Pattern

Purpose:

To provide a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern.

Values:

Pattern 1-7   DRPD is a service provided by some telephone companies. DRPD Patterns are specified by your telephone company. The patterns provided with your printer are shown below:
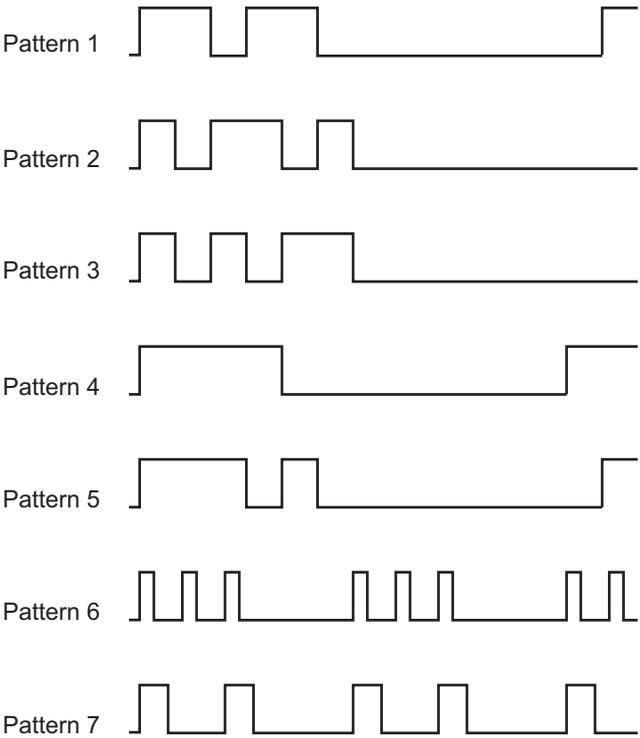
Ask your telephone company which pattern you need to select to use this service. For example, Pattern 7 is the New Zealand FaxAbility distinctive ringing pattern: rings for 400ms, stops for 800ms, rings for 400ms and stops for 1400ms. This pattern is repeated over and over again. This printer only responds to Distinctive Alert cadence(s) DA4 in New Zealand.

Forward Settings

Purpose:

To set whether to forward incoming faxes to a specified destination.

Values:

Off*	Does not forward incoming faxes.
Forward Only	Forwards the incoming faxes to a specified destination.
Print and Forward	Prints the incoming fax and forwards it to a specified destination.

Fax Fwd Number

Purpose:

To enter the fax number of the destination to which incoming faxes will be forwarded.

Prefix Dial

Purpose:

To select whether to set a prefix dial number.

Values:

Off*	Does not set a prefix dial number.
On	Sets a prefix dial number.

Prefix Dial Num

Purpose:

To set a prefix dial number of up to five digits. This number dials before any auto dial number is started. It is useful for accessing the Private Automatic Branch Exchange (PABX).

Discard Size

Purpose:

To set whether to discard text or images at the bottom of a fax page when the entire page does not fit onto the output paper.

Values:

Off*	Prints any excess at the bottom of a fax page without discarding it.
On	Discards any excess at the bottom of a fax page.
Auto Reduction	Automatically reduces a fax page to fit it onto the output paper.

ECM

Purpose:

To set whether to enable the Error Correction Mode (ECM). To use the ECM, the remote machines must also support the ECM.

Values:

Off	Disable the ECM.
On*	Enables the ECM.

Modem Speed

Purpose:

To specify the fax modem speed when a fax transmission or reception error occurs. **Values:**

2.4 Kbps
4.8 Kbps
9.6 Kbps
14.4 Kbps
33.6 Kbps*

Fax Activity

Purpose:

To set whether to automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.

Values:

Auto Print*	Automatically prints a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.
No Auto Print	Does not automatically print a fax activity report.

Fax Transmit

Purpose:

To set whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission or only when an error occurs.

Values:

Print Always	Prints a transmission report after every fax transmission.
Print On Error*	Prints a transmission report only when an error occurs.
Print Disable	Does not print a transmission report after a fax transmission.

Fax Broadcast

Purpose:

To set whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission to multiple destinations or only when an error occurs.

Values:

Print Always*	Prints a transmission report after every fax transmission.
Print On Error	Prints a transmission report only when an error occurs.
Print Disable	Does not print a transmission report after a fax transmission to multiple destinations.

Protocol Monitor

Purpose:

To set whether to print a protocol monitor report, which helps you identify the cause of a communication problem.

Values:

Print Always	Prints a protocol monitor report after every fax transmission.
Print On Error	Prints a protocol monitor report only when an error occurs.
Print Disable*	Does not print a protocol monitor report after a fax transmission.

Country

Purpose:

To select the country where the printer is used.

System Settings

Use the `System Settings` menu to configure to configure a variety of printer features.

🖉 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Power Saver Timer

Purpose:

To specify the time for transition to power saver mode.

Options:

Mode 1	5min*	Specifies the time taken by the printer before it enters the power saver timer mode 1 after it finishes a job.
	5–30min	
Mode 2	6min*	Specifies the time taken by the printer before it enters the power saver timer mode 2 after it goes into the power saver mode 1.
	1–6min	

Enter 5 in `Mode 1` to put the printer in the power saver timer mode five minutes after it finishes a job. This uses less energy, but requires more warm-up time for the printer. Enter 5 if your printer shares an electrical circuit with room lighting and you notice lights flickering.

Select a high value if your printer is in constant use. In most circumstances, this keeps the printer ready to operate with minimum warm-up time. Select a value between 5 and 30 minutes for the power saver timer mode if you want a balance between energy consumption and a shorter warm-up period.

The printer automatically returns to the standby mode from the power saver timer mode when it receives data from the computer. You can also return the printer to the standby mode by pressing any button on the operator panel.

Auto Reset

Purpose:

To automatically reset the settings for COPY, SCAN, or FAX to the defaults and return to the standby mode after you do not specify any settings for the specified time.

Values:

45sec*
1min
2min
3min
4min

Fault Time-out

Purpose:

To specify the time taken by the printer before it cancels jobs that stop abnormally. The print job is cancelled if it times out.

Options:

Off		Disables the fault time-out.
On*	60 sec*	Specifies the time taken by the printer before it cancels for jobs that stop abnormally.
	3–300 sec	

Job Time-out

Purpose:

To specify the amount of time that the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer. The print job is cancelled if it times out.

Options:

Off		Disables the job time-out.
On	30 sec*	Specifies the amount of time that the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer.
	5–300 sec	

Date & Time

Purpose:

To set the date and time, and regional time zone of the printer.

Values:

Set Date	Specifies the current date.	
Set Time	Specifies the current time.	
Date Format[1]	YY/MM/DD	Specifies the date format.
	MM/DD/YY	
	DD/MM/YY	
Time Format	12H	Specifies the time format.
	24H	
Time Zone	Specifies the time zone.	

[1] The default for Date Format varies depending on country-specific factory default.

Alert Tone

Purpose:

To configure settings for tones emitted by the printer during operation or when a warning message appears.

Values:

Panel Select Tone	Off*	Does not emit a tone when the operator panel input is correct.
	Low	Emits a tone at the specified volume when the operator panel input is correct.
	Medium	
	High	
Panel Alert Tone	Off*	Does not emit a tone when the operator panel input is incorrect.
	Low	Emits a tone at the specified volume when the operator panel input is incorrect.
	Medium	
	High	
Auto Clear Alert	Off*	Does not emit a tone before the printer performs auto clear.
	Low	Emits a tone at the specified volume 5 seconds before the printer performs auto clear.
	Medium	
	High	
Job Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when a job is complete.
	Low	Emits a tone at the specified volume when a job is complete.
	Medium*	
	High	
Alert Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when a problem occurs.
	Low	Emits a tone at the specified volume when a problem occurs.
	Medium*	
	High	
Out of Paper	Off	Does not emit a tone when the printer runs out of paper.
	Low	Emits a tone at the specified volume when the printer runs out of paper.
	Medium*	
	High	

All Tones	Off	Disables all the alert tones.
	Low	Sets the volume of all the alert tones at once.
	Medium*	
	High	

mm/inch

Purpose:

To specify the measurement unit displayed after the numeric value on the operator panel.

Values:

Millimeters (mm)	Specifies the default measurement unit.
Inches (")	

> **NOTE:** The default for mm/inch varies depending on country-specific factory default.

Auto Log Print

Purpose:

To automatically print a job history report after every 20 jobs.

Values:

Off*	Does not automatically print a job history report.
On	Automatically prints a job history report.

> **NOTE:** The job history report can also be printed using the Report List menu.

> **NOTE:** If more than 20 jobs are in the queue, the job history may be cleared.

Low Toner Alert Msg

Purpose:

To specify whether to show the alert message when the toner is low.

Values:

Off	Does not show the alert message when the toner is low.
On*	Shows the alert message when the toner is low.

Power on Wizard

Purpose:

To perform initial setup for the printer.

Values:

Yes	Performs the initial setup for the printer.
No*	Does not perform the initial setup for the printer.

Maintenance

Use the `Maintenance` menu to initialize NVM (non-volatile memory), configure the plain paper quality adjustment settings, and configure the security settings.

📝 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

F/W Version

Purpose:

To display the version of the controller.

Service Tag

Purpose:

To display the service tag of the printer.

Express Code

Purpose:

To display the express service code of the printer.

Paper Density

Purpose:

To specify the paper density.

Values:

Plain	Light
	Normal*
Label	Light
	Normal*

Adjust BTR

Purpose:

To specify the optimum voltage settings for printing for the transfer roller (BTR). To lower the voltage, set negative values. To increase, set positive values.

The default settings may not give the best output on all paper types. If you see mottles on the print output, try to increase the voltage. If you see white spots on the print output, try to decrease the voltage.

NOTE: The print quality changes depending on the values you select for this item.

Values:

Plain	0*
	-3 – +3
Plain Thick	0*
	-3 – +3
Covers	0*
	-3 – +3
Coated	0*
	-3 – +3
Label	0*
	-3 – +3

Recycled	0*
	-3 – +3
Envelope	0*
	-3 – +3

Adjust Fuser

Purpose:

To specify the optimum temperature settings for printing for the fuser. To lower the temperature, set negative values. To increase, set positive values.

The default settings may not give the best output on all paper types. When the printed paper has curled, try to lower the temperature. When the toner does not fuse on the paper properly, try to increase the temperature.

NOTE: The print quality changes depending on the values you select for this item.

Values:

Plain	0*
	-3 – +3
Plain Thick	0*
	-3 – +3
Covers	0*
	-3 – +3
Coated	0*
	-3 – +3
Label	0*
	-3 – +3
Recycled	0*
	-3 – +3
Envelope	0*
	-3 – +3

Auto Regi Adjust

Purpose:

To specify whether to automatically adjust color registration.

Values:

Off	Does not automatically adjust color registration.
On*	Automatically adjusts color registration.

Adjust ColorRegi

Purpose:

To automatically adjust color registration.

Color registration adjustment need to be made during the initial setup of the printer or when the printer is moved to a different location.

> **NOTE:** This item is available only when `Auto Regi Adjust` is set to `Off`.

Clean Developer

Purpose:

To rotate the developer motor and stir the toner in the toner cartridge.

Yes	Stirs the toner in a new toner cartridge.
No*	Does not stir the toner in a new toner cartridge.

Toner Refresh

Purpose:

To use up a toner cartridge when you need to replace it before the end of its life, or to stir the toner in a new toner cartridge.

Yellow	**Yes**	Cleans the toner in the yellow toner cartridge.
	No*	Does not clean the toner in the yellow toner cartridge.

Magenta	Yes	Cleans the toner in the magenta toner cartridge.
	No*	Does not clean the toner in the magenta toner cartridge.
Cyan	Yes	Cleans the toner in the cyan toner cartridge.
	No*	Does not clean the toner in the cyan toner cartridge.
Black	Yes	Cleans the toner in the black toner cartridge.
	No*	Does not clean the toner in the black toner cartridge.

BTR Refresh

Purpose:

Specify whether to execute counter measures for curling/separating discharge of the paper.

Values:

Off*	Does not automatically execute counter measures for curling/separating discharge of the paper.
On	Automatically executes counter measures for curling/separating discharge of the paper.

Initialize NVM

Purpose:

To initialize NVM (non-volatile memory) for system parameters, Address Book data for fax, or Address Book data for e-mail. After executing this function and rebooting the printer, the menu parameters or data are reset to their default values.

Values:

User Fax Section	Yes	Initializes the fax number entries in the Address Book.
	No*	Does not initialize the fax number entries in the Address Book.

User Scan Section	Yes	Initializes the e-mail and server address entries in the Address Book.
	No*	Does not initialize the e-mail and server address entries in the Address Book.
System Section	Yes	Initializes the system parameters.
	No*	Does not initialize the system parameters.

Non-Dell Toner

Purpose:

To use toner cartridge of another manufacturer.

📝 **NOTE:** Using non-Dell-brand toner cartridges may make some printer features unusable, reduce print quality and decrease the reliability of your printer. Dell recommends only new Dell-brand toner cartridges for your printer. Dell does not provide warranty coverage for problems caused by using accessories, parts, or components not supplied by Dell.

📝 **NOTE:** Before you use toner cartridge of another manufacturer, be sure to restart the printer.

Values:

| Off* | Does not use toner cartridge of another manufacturer. |
| On | Uses toner cartridge of another manufacturer. |

Adjust Altitude

Purpose:

To specify the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.

The discharge phenomenon for charging the photo conductor varies with barometric pressure. Adjustments are performed by specifying the altitude of the location where the printer is being used.

📝 **NOTE:** An incorrect altitude adjustment setting leads to poor printing quality, incorrect indication of remaining toner.

Values:

0m*		Specifies the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.
1000m		
2000m		
3000m		

Secure Settings

Use the `Secure Settings` menu to set a password to limit access to the menus. This prevents items from being changed accidentally.

✎ NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Panel Lock

Purpose:

To restrict access to `Admin Menu` with a password.

For details see "Panel Lock Function" on page 405.

✎ NOTE: You can select **Disable** for **Panel Lock Set** when all items under **Function Enabled** are set to **On** and **Secure Receive Set** is set to **Disable**.

Values:

Panel Lock Set	Disable*	Does not restrict access to `Admin Menu` with a password.
	Enable	Restricts access to `Admin Menu` with a password.
Change Password	0000–9999	Sets or changes the password required to access `Admin Menu`.

Function Enabled

Purpose:

To specify whether to enable each of the printer services or to require a password to use the services, and to set or change the password.

✎ NOTE: You can access to the items under `Function Enabled` only when `Panel Lock Set` is set to `Enable`.

Values:

Copy	On	Enables the Copy service.
	Off	Disables the Copy service.
	On (Password)	Enables the Copy service with a black and white mode, but requires a password.
	On (Color Password)	Enables the Copy service with a color mode, but requires a password.
FAX	On	Enables the Fax service.
	Off	Disables the Fax service (the printer will not send or receive faxes).
	On (Password)	Enables the Fax services, but requires a password to send faxes (does not require a password to receive incoming faxes).
SCAN	On	Enables the Scan service.
	Off	Disables the Scan service.
	On (Password)	Enables the Scan service, but requires a password.
USB-Print	On*	Enables the USB-Print service.
	Off	Disables the USB-Print service.
	On (Password)	Enables the USB-Print service with a black and white mode, but requires a password.
	On (Color Password)	Enables the USB-Print service with a color mode, but requires a password.
Change Password		Sets or changes the password required to use the Copy, Scan, Fax, and USB-Print services.

Secure Receive

Purpose:

To specify whether to require a password to print incoming faxes, and to set or change the password. When Secure Receive Set is set to Enable, the printer stores incoming faxes and prints them when the correct password is entered on the operator panel.

NOTE: You can access to the items under Secure Receive Set only when Panel Lock Set is set to Enable.

Values:

Secure Receive Set	Disable*	Does not require a password to print incoming faxes.
	Enable	Requires a password to print incoming faxes.
Change Password	0000–9999	Sets or changes the password required to print incoming faxes.

Scan to EMail

Use the `Scan to EMail` menu to edit the transmission source.

✍ **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Edit From Field

Disable	Disables editing of the transmission source.
Enable*	Enables editing of the transmission source.

USB Settings

Use the `USB Settings` menu to change printer settings affecting a USB port.

✍ **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

USB Port

Purpose:

To enable or disable the USB interface. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on.

Values:

Enable*	Enables the USB interface.
Disable	Disables the USB interface.

Panel Language

Purpose:

To specify the language to be used on the operator panel.

Values:

English*
Français
Italiano
Deutsch
Español
Dansk
Nederlands
Norsk
Svenska

Panel Lock Function

This feature prevents unauthorized users from changing settings made by the administrator. However, you can select settings for individual print jobs using the printer driver.

Enabling the Panel Lock

1   Press the ☰ (**Menu**) button.

2   Press the ∨ button until `System` is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

3   Press the ∨ button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

4   Press the ∨ button until `Secure Settings` is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

5   Ensure that `Panel Lock` is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

6   Ensure that `Panel Lock Set` is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

7 Press the ∨ button until `Enable` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

> 📝 **NOTE:** The factory-default panel password is 0000.

> 📝 **NOTE:** Be sure to remember the password. The procedure described below allows you to reset the password, but the settings for Address Book and Phone Book are cleared.
>   • Turn off the printer. Then, while holding the ▤ **(Menu)** button, turn on the printer.

> 📝 **NOTE:** If you change the password while `Panel Lock` is `Enable`, perform steps 1 to 5. Press the ✓ button until `Change Password` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button. Enter the new password, and then press the ✓ button. This will change the password.

Disabling the Panel Lock

1 Press the ▤ (**Menu**) button.

2 Press the ∨ button until `System` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

3 Press the ∨ button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

4 Enter the password, and then press the ✓ button.

5 Press the ∨ button until `Secure Settings` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

6 Ensure that `Panel Lock` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

7 Ensure that `Panel Lock Set` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

8 Press the ∨ button until `Disable` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

Resetting Defaults

After executing this function and rebooting the printer, the menu parameters or data are reset to their default values.

1 Press the ▤ (**Menu**) button.

2 Press the ∨ button until `System` is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

3 Press the ∨ button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

4 Press the ∨ button until `Maintenance` is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

5 Press the ∨ button until `Initialize NVM` is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

6 Press the ∨ button until the desired setting is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

7 Press the ∨ button until `Yes` is highlighted, and then press the ✔ button.

The printer restarts automatically to apply the settings.

21

Understanding Your Printer Software (Windows Only)

Use the *Drivers and Utilities* CD that shipped with your printer to install a combination of software programs, depending on your operating system.

Printer Status Window

The **Printer Status** window alerts you when there is a warning or when an error occurs, for example, when a paper jam occurs or toner is running low.

By default, the **Printer Status** window launches only when an error occurs. When an error occurs, the error message appears on the **Printer Status** window. You can set the **Printer Status** window to always launch when printing in **Printing Status Window Properties**.

You can also check the toner level of your printer.

Status Monitor Console

Use the **Status Monitor Console** to manage multiple instances of the **Status Window** for a particular printer.

Select a printer from the list view (or **Printer Selection**) by clicking its name to open a **Status Window** for a particular printer.

Dell Supplies Management System

You can launch the **Dell Supplies Management System** dialog box from the **All Programs** menu or the desktop icon.

You can order consumables by phone or from the web.

1   Click **Start→ All Programs→ Dell Printers→ Dell 1355 Multifunction Color Printer→ Dell Supplies Management System**.

   The **Dell Supplies Management System** window appears.

2   Select your printer from the **Select Printer Model** list.

3   If you are ordering from the web:

   a   Select a web address from the **Select Reorder URL** list.

b Click **Visit Dell printer supplies ordering web site**.

Dell 1355cn Color MFP - Dell Supplies Management System window appears.

c Enter the Service Tag, and then click **OK**.

If you order by phone, call the number that appears in the **Order by Phone** section.

Software Update

The firmware and/or driver updates can be downloaded from the Dell Support website located at **support.dell.com**.

Quick Launch Utility

Using the **Quick Launch Utility** window, you can open the **Status Window**, **Tool Box**, **Updater**, **Troubleshooting**, **Address Book Editor**, **ScanButton Manager**, and **Dell ScanCenter**.

To use the **Quick Launch Utility**, select to install the **Quick Launch Utility** when you install the Dell software.

To open the **Quick Launch Utility** window:

1 Click **Start**→ **All Programs**→ **Dell Printers**→ **Dell 1355 Multifunction Color Printer**→ **Quick Launch Utility**.

The **Quick Launch Utility** dialog box opens.
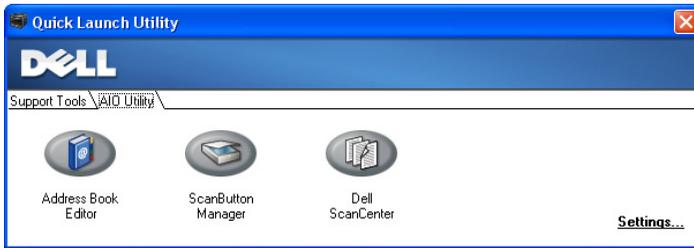
2 The **Quick Launch Utility** window provides seven buttons; **Status Window**, **Tool Box**, **Updater**, **Troubleshooting**, **Address Book Editor**, **ScanButton Manager**, and **Dell ScanCenter**.

To exit, click the X button at the top-right of the window.

For details, click the **Help** button of each application.

Status Window	Click to open the Printing Status window. See "Printer Status Window" on page 409.
Tool Box	Click to open the Tool Box. See "Understanding the Tool Box Menus" on page 323.
Updater	Click to update the Dell software and printer firmware.
Troubleshooting	Click to open the Troubleshooting Guide, which allows you to resolve issues by yourself.
Address Book Editor	Click to open the Address Book Editor, which allows you to create and edit Address Book entries.
ScanButton Manager	Click to open the ScanButton Manager, which allows you to specify how the ScanButton Manager behaves for scan events that the device generates.
Dell ScanCenter	Click to open the Dell ScanCenter.

Address Book Editor
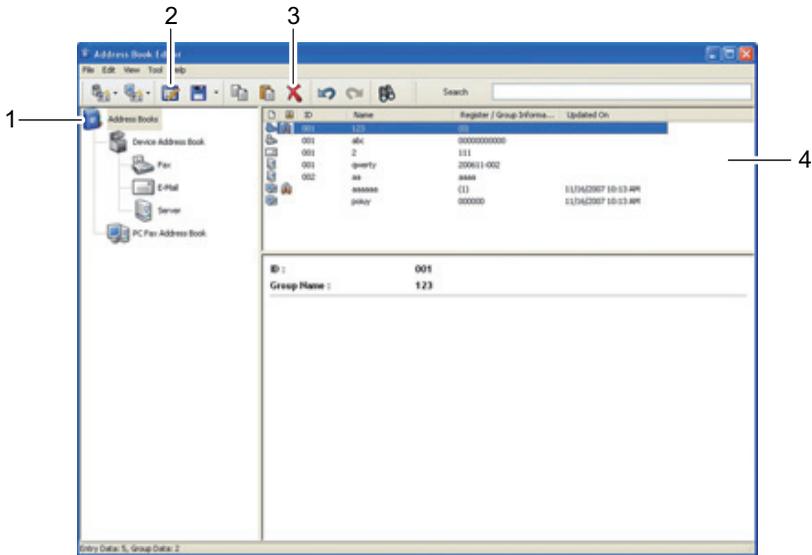
1	Read the Device **Address Book** entries from the printer to the Address Book Editor and read the PC Fax Address Book entries from the PC to the Address Book Editor.
2	Allows you to edit a selected **Address Book** entry in the edit dialog box.
3	Deletes a selected **Address Book** entry.
4	Displays **Address Book** entries.

 NOTE: You must install the fax driver before reading or editing the **Address Book** entries.

For more information about Address Book Editor, see the **Help** of Address Book Editor.

ScanButton Manager

The `Scan to Application` stores the image files in the **My Documents** folder by default, and then you can open them using the related application. Use **ScanButton Manager** to change the output destination of the obtained image files and to select whether to open the image files using the related application.
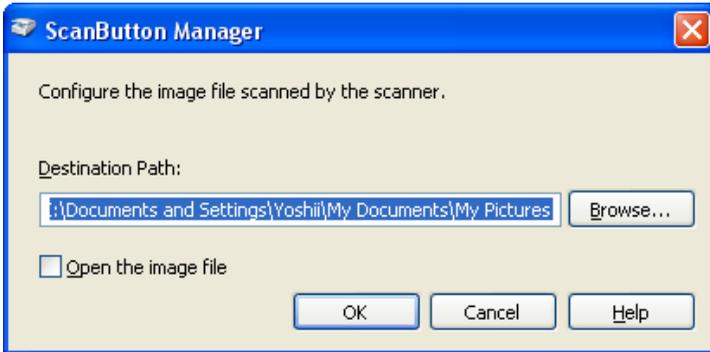
ScanDirect

ScanDirect is a PaperPort application that enables you to scan items and send them directly to PaperPort or other programs on your computer without running the PaperPort program first. For more information about using ScanDirect, refer to PaperPort's Help menu.

User Setup Disk Creating Tool

The **User Setup Disk Creating Tool** program located in the **MakeDisk** folder of the **Utilities** folder on the *Drivers and Utilities* CD and the printer drivers located on the *Drivers and Utilities* CD are used to create driver installation

packages that contain custom driver settings. A driver installation package can contain a group of saved printer driver settings and other data for things such as:

- Print orientation and Multiple Up (document settings)
- Watermarks

If you want to install the printer driver with the same settings on multiple computers running on the same operating system, create a setup disk in a floppy disk or in a server on the network. Using the setup disk that you have created will reduce the amount of work required when installing the printer driver.

- Install the Dell™ 1355cnw Multifunction Color Printer driver in the computer on which the setup disk is to be created.
- The setup disk can only be used on the operating system on which the disk was created or computers running the same operating system. Create a separate setup disk for each of the operating systems.

22

Understanding Printer Messages

The printer operator panel displays messages describing the current state of the printer and indicates possible printer problems you must resolve. This chapter describes messages, their meanings, and how to clear the messages.

⬤ **NOTICE:** When an error code is displayed, the print data remaining on the printer and the information accumulated in the memory of the printer are not secured.
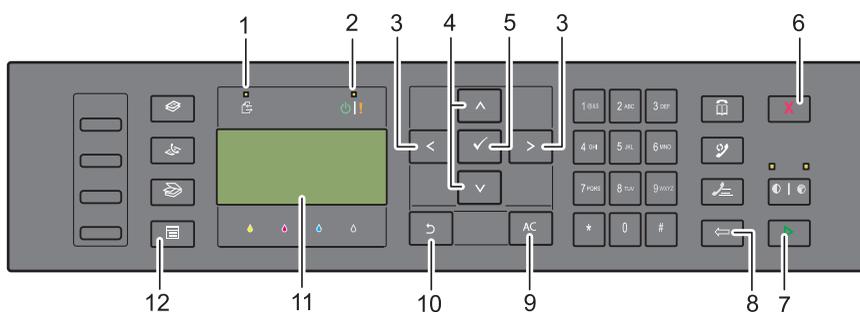
1	Data LED	2	Ready / Error LED[*1]
3	‹ › buttons	4	∨ ∧ buttons
5	✓ button	6	✗ (**Cancel**) button
7	▶ (**Start**) button	8	⬅ (**Back**) button
9	AC (**All Clear**) button	10	↩ (**Backspace**) button
11	LCD Panel	12	☰ (**Menu**) button

[*1] The Error LED is on the right and blinks when an error occurs.

Error-Code	What you can do
001-360	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact Dell. See "Contacting Dell" on page 504.
003-340	
003-356	
005-121	Check and clear the paper path. See "Clearing Paper Jams From the ADF" on page 461.
005-301	Close the ADF cover.
006-370	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact Dell. See "Contacting Dell" on page 504.
007-340	
007-371	
009-360	Re-install the specified toner cartridge. See "Installing a Toner Cartridge" on page 442.
009-361	
009-362	
009-363	
009-654	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact Dell. See "Contacting Dell" on page 504.
010-354	
010-377	
016-315	
016-317	
016-338	
016-344	
016-347	
016-354	
016-355	
016-370	
016-372	
016-374	
016-375	
016-376	
016-377	

Error-Code	What you can do
016-393 016-395	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact Dell. See "Contacting Dell" on page 504.
016-503	Press the ✓ button. Check if SMTP server and DNS server are set correctly.
016-504	Press the ✓ button. Check if user name and password for POP3 server and DNS server are set correctly.
016-507	Press the ✓ button. Check if user name and password used for SMTP server are set correctly.
016-700 016-701 016-720	Press the ✓ button to cancel the current print job.
016-744 016-745	Press the ✓ button. Contact Dell if this message appears repeatedly. See "Contacting Dell" on page 504.
016-749	Press the ✓ button to cancel the current print job.
016-764 016-766	Press the ✓ button. Contact SMTP server administrator.
016-767	Press the ✓ button. Check e-mail address, and try scanning again.
016-794 016-795 016-797	Press the ✓ button to clear the message.
016-920	Press the ✓ button. Execute the operation again according to the operation procedure.
016-981	Press the ✓ button to cancel the current print job.
016-985 017-970	Press the ✓ button. Retry scanning by lowering the resolution setting or changing the file format of the scanned image.
017-980 017-981 017-988	Press the ✓ button to clear the message.
024-914	Load the specified paper. See "Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)" on page 202 or "Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)" on page 211.

Error-Code	What you can do
024-969	Load the appropriate paper. See "Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)" on page 202 or "Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)" on page 211.
026-720 026-721 026-722 026-723 026-750 026-751 026-752	Press the ✓ button to clear the message.
027-446 027-452	Change IP address to avoid duplication. Turn off the printer, and turn it on again.
031-521	Press the ✓ button. Confirm login-able computer with your system administrator.
031-526	Press the ✓ button. Check DNS connection, or check if forwarding destination server is registered with DNS.
031-529	Press the ✓ button. Check if password is correct.
031-530	Press the ✓ button. Check if storage location is correct. Storage location you specified is DFS setting, and check if it is linked to other server. Specify directly linked server, share name, and storage location.
031-533 031-534	Press the ✓ button. Check the following: • If the file name you specified is not used by other users. • If file or folder that has the same name as the one you specified already exists.
031-535 031-536	Press the ✓ button. Check if other user is not operating file in storage location you specified.
031-537	Press the ✓ button. Check if storage location has free space.
031-555 031-556	Press the ✓ button to clear the message.
031-557	Press the ✓ button. Change the file name that already exists on FTP server.

Error-Code	What you can do
031-558	Press the ✓ button to clear the message.
031-571	
031-574	Press the ✓ button. Check DNS connection, or check if name of forwarding destination server is registered with DNS.
031-575	Press the ✓ button. Set DNS address, or set forwarding destination server address as IP address.
031-576	Press the ✓ button. Check if the printer communicates with forwarding destination FTP server. For example, check connection of network cable and if the IP address of the server is correct.
031-578	Press the ✓ button. Check if login name (user name) and password are correct.
031-579	Press the ✓ button. Check if storage location is correct.
031-582	Press the ✓ button. Check if the file name you specified can be created in storage location. Check if storage location has free space.
031-584	Press the ✓ button. Check if the folder name you specified can be created in storage location. Check if the folder that has the same name as the one you specified already exists.
031-585	Press the ✓ button. Check server access rights.
031-587	
031-588	Press the ✓ button. Check if storage location has free space.
031-589	Press the ✓ button to clear the message.
031-594	Press the ✓ button. Execute the operation again according to the operation procedure. Contact Dell if this message appears repeatedly. See "Contacting Dell" on page 504.
031-598	Press the ✓ button. Check append access right to the file and if server supports FTP append command.
033-503	Press the ✓ button to clear the message.
033-513	Press the ✓ button. Print the received fax, or wait for a while until sending a fax is completed.
033-517	Press the ✓ button. Check if password is correct.
033-518	Press the ✓ button. Check if your country code is set correctly.

Error-Code	What you can do
033-519	Press the ✓ button to clear the message.
033-787	
033-788	Press the ✓ button. Remove the received fax, or wait for a while until sending a fax is completed. Press the ✓ button to clear the message.
034-700	Press the ✓ button to clear the message. Check that the phone line is connected properly. See "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 48.
034-701	
034-702	
034-703	
034-704	
034-705	
034-706	
034-707	
034-708	
034-709	
034-710	
034-711	
034-712	
034-713	
034-714	
034-715	
034-716	
034-717	
034-718	
034-719	
034-720	
034-721	
034-722	
034-723	
034-724	

Error-Code	What you can do
034-725	
034-726	
034-727	
034-750	
034-751	
034-752	
034-753	
034-754	
034-755	
034-756	
034-757	
034-758	
034-759	
034-760	
034-761	
034-762	
034-763	
034-764	
034-765	
034-766	
034-767	
034-768	
062-321	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact Dell. See "Contacting Dell" on page 504.
062-790	Press the ✓ button.
075-100	Check and clear the paper path, load the specified paper, and then press the ✓ button. See "Clearing Paper Jams From the Front of the Printer" on page 465.
075-921	Load paper for the second side (odd) pages, and press the ✓ button. See Figure "Manual Duplex Printing (Windows Printer Driver Only)" on page 218.

Error-Code	What you can do
077-100	Check and clear the paper path. See "Clearing Jams" on page 459.
077-101	
077-102	Check and clear the paper path. See "Clearing Paper Jams From the Back of the Printer" on page 467.
077-104	Check and clear the paper path. See "Clearing Jams" on page 459.
077-105	
077-300	Close the rear cover.
077-900	Check and clear the paper path. See "Clearing Paper Jams From the Output Tray" on page 470.
077-901	Check and clear the paper path. See "Clearing Jams" on page 459.
091-402	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact Dell. See "Contacting Dell" on page 504.
092-310	Clean the CTD sensor. See "Cleaning the Color Toner Density (CTD) Sensor" on page 448.
093-423	Replace the specified toner cartridge soon. Order a new consumable from **www.dell.com/supplies**.
093-424	
093-425	See "Replacing Toner Cartridges" on page 441.
093-426	
093-919	Re-install or replace the specified toner cartridge. See "Replacing Toner Cartridges" on page 441.
093-920	
093-921	
093-922	
093-930	Remove the specified toner cartridge and install a new one. If you do not replace the toner cartridge, print quality problems may occur. Order a new consumable from **www.dell.com/supplies**.
093-931	
093-932	
093-933	See "Replacing Toner Cartridges" on page 441.
093-960	"Replace the specified toner cartridge with the supported one. Order a new consumable from **www.dell.com/supplies**.
093-961	
093-962	See "Replacing Toner Cartridges" on page 441.
093-963	

Error-Code	What you can do
093-970	Re-install the specified toner cartridge. See "Installing a Toner Cartridge" on page 442.
093-971	
093-972	
093-973	
117-331	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact Dell. See "Contacting Dell" on page 504.
117-332	
117-333	
117-334	
117-340	
117-342	
117-343	
117-344	
117-346	
117-348	
117-349	
117-350	
117-351	
117-366	
124-333	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact Dell. See "Contacting Dell" on page 504.
134-211	
191-310	
193-700	This message indicates the printer is in the non-Dell toner mode.

23

Printing with Web Services on Devices (WSD)

This section provides information for network printing with WSD, the new Windows Vista®, Windows Server® 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, and Windows® 7 protocol of Microsoft®.

Adding Roles of Print Services

When you use Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 R2, you need to add the roles of print services to the Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 R2 client.

For Windows Server 2008:

1 Click **Start**→ **Administrative Tools**→ **Server Manager**.

2 Select **Add Roles** from the **Action** menu.

3 Check the **Print Services** check box on the **Server Roles** window in the **Add Roles Wizard**, and then click **Next**.

4 Check the **Print Server** check box, and then click **Next**.

5 Click **Install**.

For Windows Server 2008 R2:

1 Click **Start**→ **Administrative Tools**→ **Server Manager**.

2 Select **Add Roles** from the **Action** menu.

3 Check the **Print and Document Services** check box on the **Server Roles** window in the **Add Roles Wizard**, and then click **Next**.

4 Click **Next**.

5 Check the **Print Server** check box, and then click **Next**.

6 Click **Install**.

Printer Setup

You can install your new printer on the network using the *Drivers and Utilities* CD that shipped with your printer, or using Microsoft's Windows **Add Printer** wizard.

Installing a Printer Driver Using the Add Printer Wizard

1 Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**→ **Hardware and Sound**→ **Printers** (**Start**→ **Devices and Printers** for Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7).

2 Click **Add a printer** to launch the **Add Printer** wizard.

3 Select **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.

4 In the list of available printers, select the one you want to use, and then click **Next**.

> 📝 **NOTE:** In the list of available printers, the WSD printer is displayed in the form of **http://IP address/ws/**.

> 📝 **NOTE:** If no WSD printer is displayed in the list, enter the printer's IP address manually to create a WSD printer. To enter the printer's IP address manually, follow the instructions below. For Windows Server 2008 R2, to create a WSD printer, you must be a member of Administrators group.
> 1. Click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.
> 2. Select **Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or hostname** and click **Next**.
> 3. Select **Web Services Device** from **Device type**.
> 4. Enter the printer's IP address in the **Hostname or IP address** text box and click **Next**.

> 📝 **NOTE:** Before installing the driver using the **Add Printer?** wizard on Windows Server 2008 R2 or Windows 7, perform one of the followings:
> - Establish the Internet connection so that Windows Update can scan your computer.
> - Add the printer driver to your computer in advance.

5 If prompted, install the printer driver on your computer. If you are prompted for an administrator password or confirmation, type the password or provide confirmation.

6 Complete the additional steps in the wizard, and then click **Finish**.

7 Print a test page to verify print installation.

a Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**→ **Hardware and Sound**→ **Printers** (**Start**→ **Devices and Printers** for Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7).

b Right-click the printer you just created, and then click **Properties** (**Printer properties** for Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7).

On the **Options** tab, set each setting item, and then click **Apply**.

c On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**. When a test page is printed successfully, installation is complete.

24

Specifications

Operating System Compatibility

Your Dell™ 1355cn/1355cnw Multifunction Color Printer is compatible with Microsoft® Windows® XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server® 2003, Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition, Windows Vista®, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows 7, and Windows 7 64-bit Edition, Mac OS® X 10.4.11/10.5.6, 10.6.x or later.

[1] Dell technical phone support only supports factory-installed operating systems (Microsoft) for the first 30 days for free. See **http://www1.us.dell.com/content/products/compare.aspx/laser?c=us&cs= 555&l=en&s=biz** for more details. The customer will have to purchase technical support from the manufacturer of the operating system in order to get technical assistance beyond 30 days.

[2] If the customer has other operating systems and has purchased Gold Technical Support (for more information on Gold Technical Support, see **http://www1.us.dell.com/content/topics/global.aspx/services/en/gts?c= us&cs=555&l=en&s=biz**), the telephone support will be a "best effort" attempt to resolve the operating system issue. If the manufacturer needs to be contacted, the customer must pay an additional fee for that support. The only time that Dell pays for the third party support is when Dell is responsible for the issue. In the case of getting the printer installed and working, this is configuration and the customer would be responsible for paying.

Power Supply

Rated Voltage	220-240 VAC	110-127 VAC
Frequency	50/60 Hz	50/60 Hz
Current	5.0 A	11.0 A

Dimensions

Height: 338 mm (13.31 inches) Width: 410 mm (16.14 inches) Depth: 379 mm (14.92 inches)

Weight (only the toner cartridges are included):

- 1355cn: 14.8 kg (32.63 lb)
- 1355cnw: 14.9 kg (32.85 lb)

Memory

Base memory	128 MB

Page Description Language (PDL)/Emulation, Operating System, and Interface

PDL/Emulations	Host-based printing system	
OSes	Microsoft Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2 64-bit Edition, Windows XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition, Mac OS X Version 10.4.11, 10.5.8, and 10.6	
Interfaces	Standard local:	USB 2.0
	Standard network:	10Base-T/100Base-TX Ethernet
		IEEE 802.11b/802.11g (Wireless)

MIB Compatibility

A Management Information Base (MIB) is a database containing information about network devices (such as adapters, bridges, routers, or computers). This information helps network administrators manage the network (analyze performance, traffic, errors, and so on). Dell™ 1355cn/1355cnw

Multifunction Color Printer complies with standard industry MIB specifications, allowing the printer to be recognized and managed by various printer and network management software systems.

Environment

Operation

Temperature	10-32°C
Relative humidity	10-85% RH (no condensation)

Print Quality Guarantee

Temperature	15-28°C
Relative humidity	20-70% RH (no condensation)

Storage

Temperature range	-20-40°C
Storage humidity range	5-80% RH (no condensation)

Altitude

Operating	Up to 3,100 m (10,000 feet)
Storage	70.9275 Kpa

NOTE: For more information on adjusting the altitude, see "Adjust Altitude" on page 340.

Cables

Your interconnection cable must meet the following requirements:

	Connection type	Connection specifications and symbols
1	Ethernet	10 Base-T/100 Base-TX
2	USB	USB 2.0
3	Wall Jack Connector	LINE
4	Phone Connector	PHONE
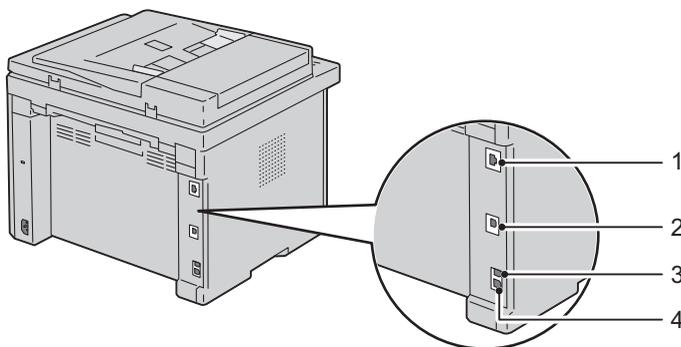
Copier Specifications

Item	Description
Copy Resolution	Optical: 600x600 dots/25.4 mm (1 inch), ADF: 600x300 dots/25.4mm (1 inch) (Same for Color/Black&White)

Item	Description
Copy Speed	Color 12 cpm or more, Black&White 15 cpm or more (When using the document glass to make sequential copies of a document with pages scanned one by one.)
	Color 2.87 cpm or more, Black&White 10.64 cpm or more (When using the ADF to make sequential copies of multiple documents.)
Paper Size	A4, A5, B5, Executive, Letter, Folio, Legal, Monarch, DL, C5, Envelope #10
Zoom Rate	Document glass: 25% - 400%, ADF: 25% - 400%
Multiple copies	1 - 99 pages
Copy mode (=Original Type)	Text, Text & Photo, Photo
Scanning method	Platen: Document-fixed flatbed scanning method
	ADF: Carriage-fixed, document-feeding scanning method (one side scanning)

Scanner Specifications

Item	Description
Compatibility	Tool Without An Interesting Name (TWAIN), Windows Image Acquisition (WIA)
Scan Resolution	TWAIN: 75 x 75 to 4800 x 4800 dots/25.4 mm (1 inch)
	WIA: 75/100/150/200/300/400/600 dots/25.4 mm (1 inch)
	Resolutions other than the following are achieved by driver's resolution conversion:
	200 x 200 dots/25.4 mm (1 inch)
	300 x 300 dots/25.4 mm (1 inch) (Default)
	600 x 600 dots/25.4 mm (1 inch)
	1200 x 1200 dots/25.4 mm (1 inch)
Color bit depth	24 bit (WIA, TWAIN)
Mono bit depth	1 bit for Line art and 8 bit for Gray scale

Item	Description
Effective scanning length	Document glass: 297 mm (11.69 inches), ADF: 355.6 mm (14 inches)
Effective scanning width	215.9 mm (8.5 inches)
Scan speed (Text mode)	Black&White: 641.22 μsec/line (600 dots/25.4 mm (1 inch)), 1265.19 μsec/line (1200 dots/25.4 mm (1 inch)) Color: 2176.52 μsec/line (600 dots/25.4 mm (1 inch)), 4363.36 μsec/line (1200 dots/25.4 mm (1 inch))

Facsimile Specifications

Item	Description
Compatibility	ITU-T Group 3
Applicable line	Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN)
Data coding	Black&White: 1bit, JBIG, MMR, MR, MH encoding Color: Not supported
Max modem speed	33.6 Kbps
Transmission speed	Approx. 3 seconds/page *Transmission time applies to memory transmission of text data scanned in Standard resolution with ECM using only ITU-T No.1 Chart.
Scanning speed	Document glass: approx. 3 seconds/A4 (at standard fax resolution mode) ADF: approx. 5 seconds/Letter (at standard fax resolution mode), 7.5 seconds/Letter (at fine fax resolution mode)
Maximum document length	Document glass: 297 mm (11.69 inches), ADF: 355.6 mm (14 inches)
Paper size	Letter, A4, Legal

Item	Description
Resolution	Standard: 8 pels/mm (203 pels/inch) x 3.85 lines/mm (98 lines/inch) 200 dpi x 100 dpi
	Fine: 8 pels/mm (203 pels/inch) x 7.7 lines/mm (196 lines/inch) 200 dpi x 200 dpi
	Super Fine: 8 pels/mm (203 pels/inch) x 15.4 lines/mm (391 lines/inch) 200 dpi x 400 dpi
	Ultra Fine: 16 pels/mm (406 pels/inch) x 15.4 lines/mm (391 lines/inch) 400 dpi x 400 dpi
User Memory	2 MB
Halftone	256 levels

Maintaining Your Printer

25

Maintaining Your Printer

Periodically, your printer requires you to complete certain tasks to maintain optimum print quality. If several people are using the printer, you may want to designate a key operator to maintain your printer. Refer printing problems and maintenance tasks to this key operator.

Determining the Status of Supplies

If your printer is connected to the network, the **Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool** can provide instant feedback on remaining toner levels. Type the printer's IP address in your web browser to view this information. To use the **E-Mail Alert Setup** feature that notifies you when the printer requires new supplies, type your name or the name of the key operator in the e-mail list box.

On the operator panel, you can also confirm the following:

- Any supply or maintenance items that require attention replacing (However, the printer can only display information about one item at a time.)

- Amount of toner remaining in each toner cartridge

Conserving Supplies

You can change several settings in your printer driver to conserve toner cartridge and paper.

Supply	Setting	Function
Toner cartridge	**Toner Saving Mode** in the **Graphics** tab of the printer driver	This check box allows the users to select a print mode that uses less toner. When this feature is used, the image quality will be lower than when it is not used.

Supply	Setting	Function
Print media	**Multiple Up** in the **Layout** tab of the printer driver	The printer prints two or more pages on one side of a sheet. The available numbers that each printer driver can print one sheet of paper are as follows: • Windows Printer Driver: 2, 4, 8, or 16 pages • Macintosh Printer Driver: 2, 4, 6, 9, or 16 pages Combined with the duplex setting, **Multiple Up** allows you to print up to 32 pages on one sheet of paper. (16 images on the front and 16 on the back)

Storing Print Media

To avoid potential paper feeding problems and uneven print quality, there are several things you can do.

- To achieve the best possible print quality, store print media in an environment where the temperature is approximately 21°C (70°F) and the relative humidity is 40%.
- Store cartons of print media on a pallet or shelf, rather than directly on the floor.
- If you store individual packages of print media out of the original carton, ensure that they rest on a flat surface so the edges do not buckle or curl.
- Do not place anything on top of the print media packages.

Storing Consumables

Store consumables in their original packaging until you need to use them. Do not store consumables in:

- Temperatures greater than 40°C (104°F).
- An environment with extreme changes in humidity or temperature.
- Direct sunlight.
- Dusty places.
- A car for a long period of time.

- An environment where corrosive gases are present.
- An environment with salty air.

Replacing Toner Cartridges

⚠ **CAUTION: Before replacing toner cartridges, read and follow the safety instructions in your *Product Information Guide*.**

Dell toner cartridges are available only through Dell. You can order more cartridges online at **http://www.dell.com/supplies** or by phone. To order by phone, see "Contacting Dell" on page 504.

It is recommended that you use Dell toner cartridges for your printer. Dell does not provide warranty coverage for problems caused by using accessories, parts, or components not supplied by Dell.

⚠ **CAUTION: Never throw used toner cartridges into fire. The residual toner could explode resulting in burns and injuries.**

⚠ **CAUTION: Do not shake the used toner cartridge to avoid spilling of toner.**

Removing the Toner Cartridges

1 Turn off the printer.

2 Open the toner access cover.
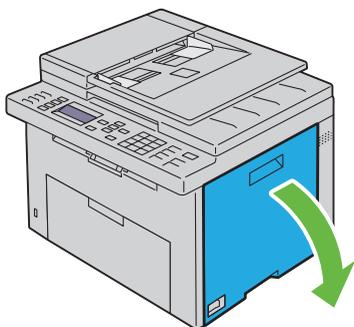
3 Pinch the cartridge firmly as shown in the illustration.
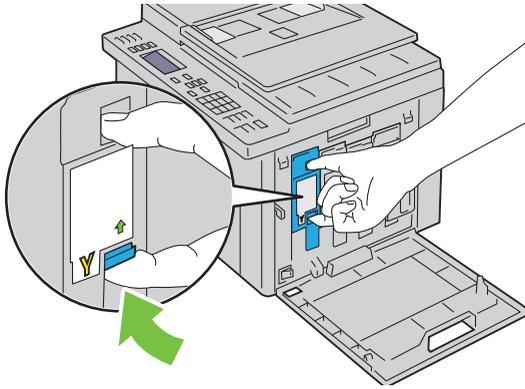
⚠ **CAUTION: Always pull the cartridge out slowly so you do not spill any toner.**

4 Pull the toner cartridge out.
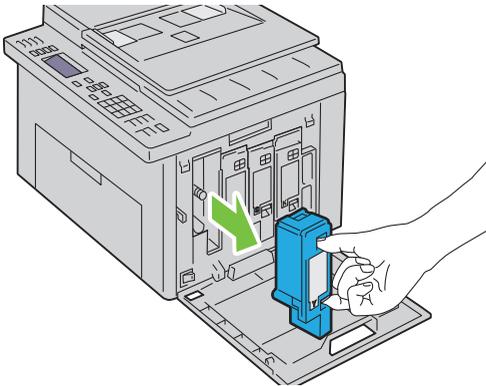
Installing a Toner Cartridge

1 Unpack a new toner cartridge of the desired color and shake it five to six times to distribute the toner evenly.
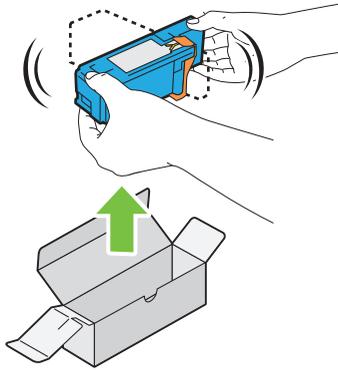
> **NOTE:** Ensure that the color of the new toner cartridge matches that on the handle before replacing it.

> **NOTE:** Handle the toner cartridge carefully to avoid spillage of the toner.

2 Remove the tape from the toner cartridge.
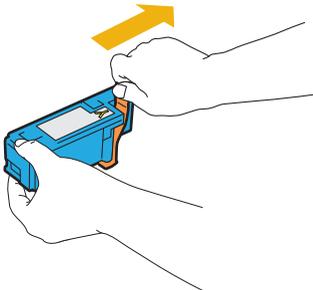
3 Adjust the toner cartridge to the associated cartridge holder, and then insert it firmly by pressing near the center of the label until the cartridge clicks.
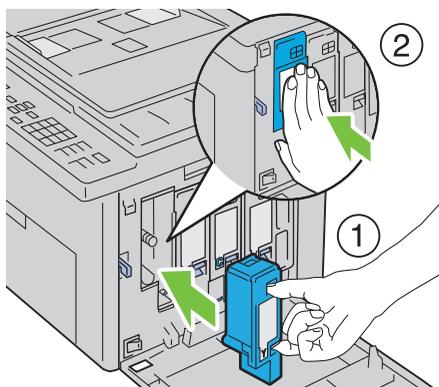
4 Close the toner access cover.
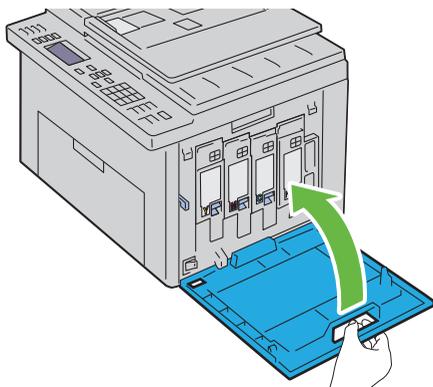
Cleaning Inside the Printer

⚠ **CAUTION: To prevent electric shock, always turn off the printer and disconnect the power cable from the grounded outlet before performing maintenance.**

1 Confirm that the printer is not in operation, and open the toner access cover.
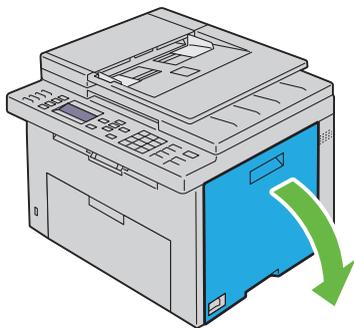
2 Pinch the cartridge firmly as shown in the illustration.
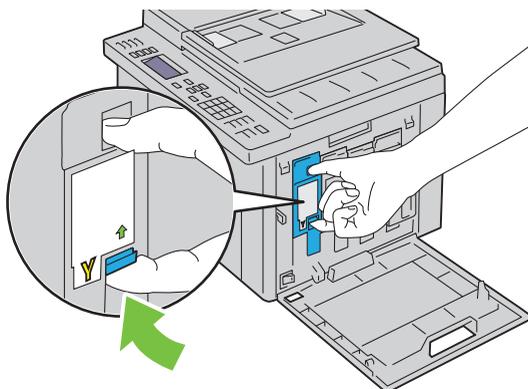
3 Pull the toner cartridge out.
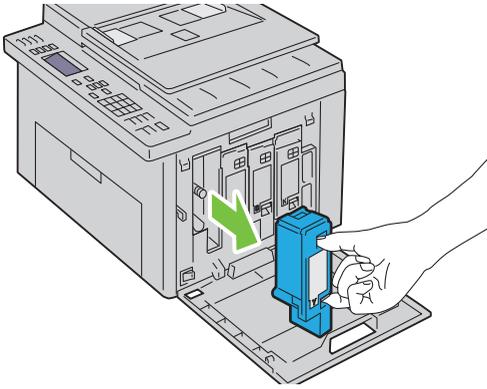
4 Pull the other three cartridges out as well.

5 Pull the cleaning rod out.
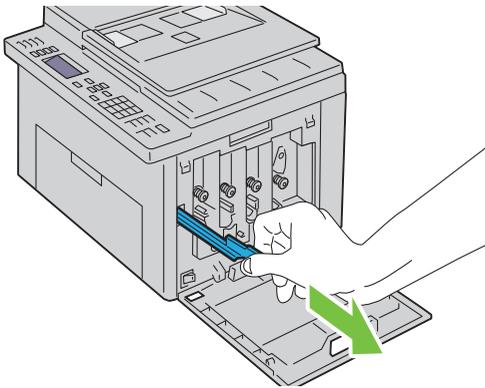
6 Insert the cleaning rod fully into the hole beside the arrow on the printer until its tip reaches the interior of the printer as illustrated below, and then pull it out.
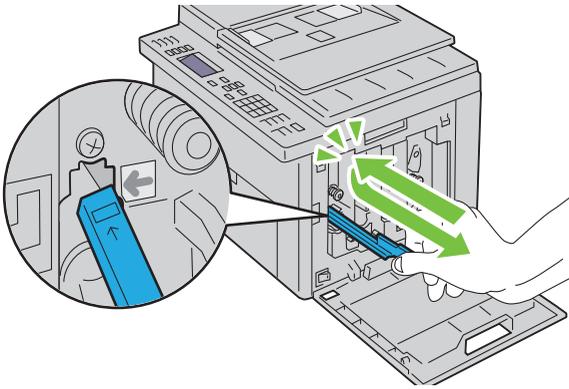
7 Repeat the same procedure for the other three holes.

8 Return the cleaning rod to its original location.
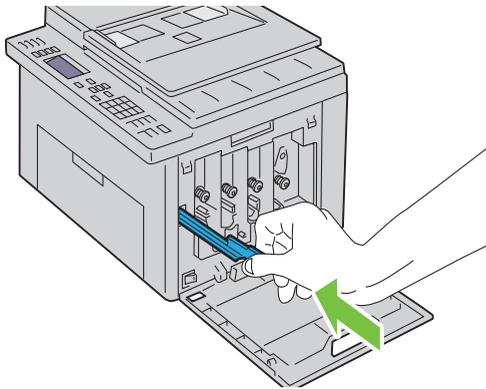
9 Replace the black cartridge by adjusting it to the associated cartridge holder, and then insert it firmly by pressing near the center of the label until the cartridge clicks.
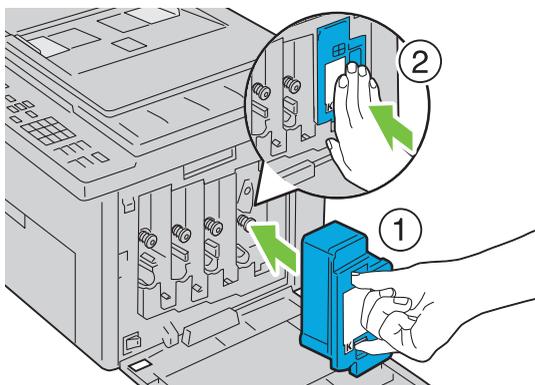
10 Replace the other three cartridges as well.

11 Close the toner access cover.
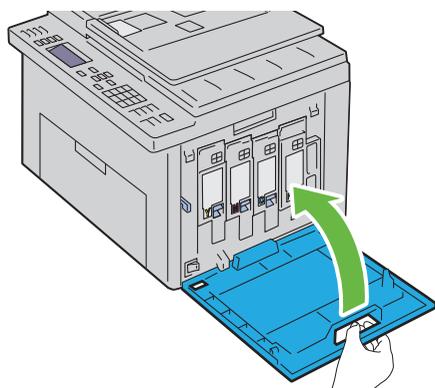
Cleaning the Color Toner Density (CTD) Sensor

Clean the CTD sensor only when an alert for the CTD sensor is shown on the Status Monitor or operator panel.

1 Ensure that the printer is turned off.

2 Push the rear cover release handle and open the rear cover.
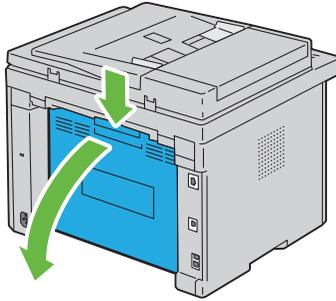
3 Clean the CTD sensor inside the printer with a clean dry cotton swab.
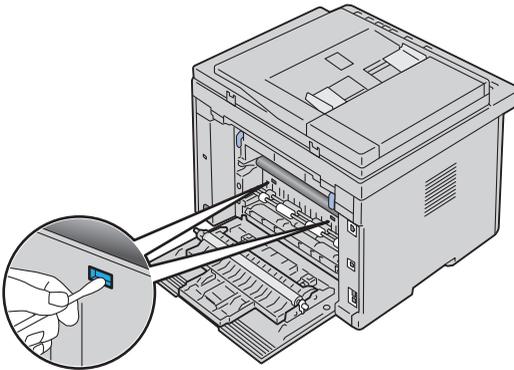
4 Close the rear cover.
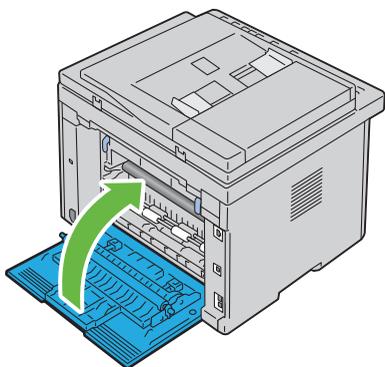
Adjusting Color Registration

This section describes how to adjust the color registration when you first install the printer or after moving it to a new location.

Performing Auto Adjust

Auto Adjust allows you to correct the color registration automatically.

The Operator Panel

1 Press the ▤ (**Menu**) button.

2 Press the ∨ button until System is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

3 Press the ∨ button until Admin Menu is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

4 Press the ∨ button until Maintenance is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

5 Press the ∨ button until Adjust ColorRegi is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

6 Ensure that Auto Adjust is highlighted, and then press the ✓ button.

7 Ensure that Are you sure? is highlighted, and then select Yes by pressing the ∧ button.

Auto adjust is performed.

The Tool Box

 NOTE:

1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Dell Printers** → **Dell 1355 Multifunction Color Printer** → **Tool Box**.

 NOTE: The **Select Printer** window is highlighted in this step, when multiple printer drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of **Dell 1355 Multifunction Color Printer** listed in **Printer Name**, and then click **OK**.

The Tool Box opens.

2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.

3 Select **Registration Adjustment** from the list at the left side of the page.

The **registration adjustment** page is displayed.

4 Uncheck the check box next to **On**.

5 Click the **Start** button next to **Auto Correct**.

The color registration is corrected automatically.

Printing the Color Registration Chart

The Tool Box

 NOTE:

1 Click **Start**→ **All Programs**→ **Dell Printers**→ **Dell 1355 Multifunction Color Printer**→ **Tool Box**.

 NOTE: The **Select Printer** dialog box opens in this step, when multiple printer drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of **Dell 1355 Multifunction Color Printer** listed in **Printer Name**, and then click **OK**.

The **Tool Box** opens.

2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.

3 Select **Registration Adjustment** from the list at the left side of the page.

The registration adjustment page is displayed.

4 Uncheck the check box next to **On**.

5 Click the **Start** button next to **Print Color Regi Chart**.

The color registration chart is printed.

Determining Values

On the color registration chart printed, find the straightest lines where the two black lines and the colored line are most closely aligned for each color (Y, M, and C).

If you find the straightest line, make a note of the value (-5 - +5) indicated by the straightest line for each color.

When the value is 0 for each color, you do not need to adjust the color registration.

When the value is not 0, enter the value according to the procedure in "Entering Values" on page 453.
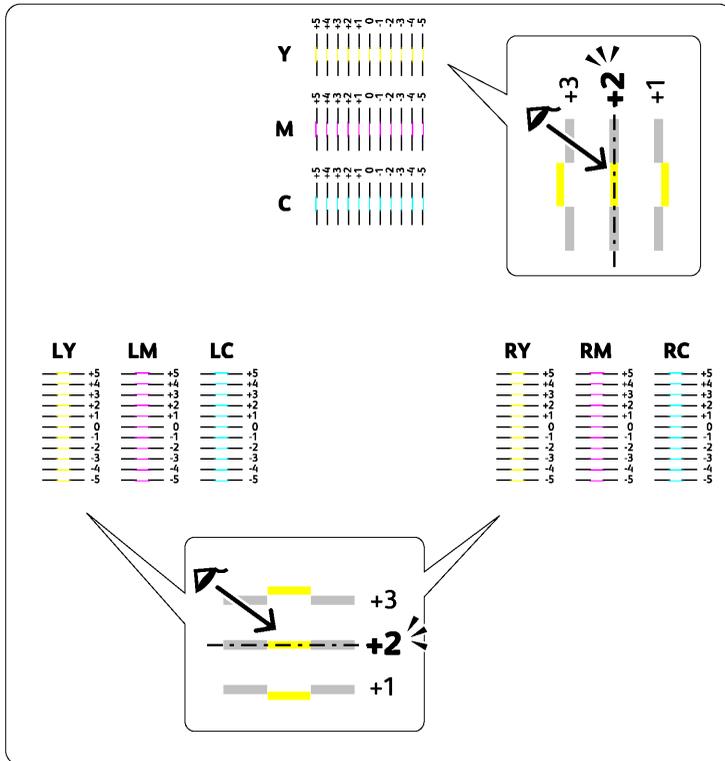
Entering Values

The Tool Box

📝 **NOTE:**

Using the Tool Box, enter the values that you found in the color registration chart to make adjustments.

1 Click **Start**→ **All Programs**→ **Dell Printers**→ **Dell 1355 Multifunction Color Printer**→ **Tool Box**.

   The **Tool Box** opens.

2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.

3 Select **Registration Adjustment** from the list at the left side of the page.

The registration adjustment page is displayed.

4 Select the value with the straight line, and then click the **Apply New Settings** button.

5 Click the **Start** button next to **Print Color Regi Chart**.

The color registration chart is printed with the new values.

6 Adjust until all straight lines are at the value of 0. Show image of before and after adjustment will help.

> **NOTICE:** After printing the color registration chart, do not turn off the printer until the printer motor has stopped running.

Cleaning the Scanner

Keeping the scanner clean helps ensure the best possible copies. It is recommended to clean the scanner at the start of each day and during the day, as needed.

1 Slightly dampen a soft lint-free cloth or paper towel with water.

2 Open the document cover.
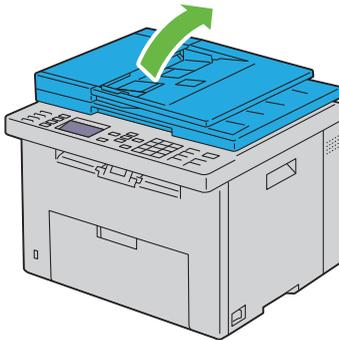
3 Wipe the surface of the document glass and ADF glass until it is clean and dry.
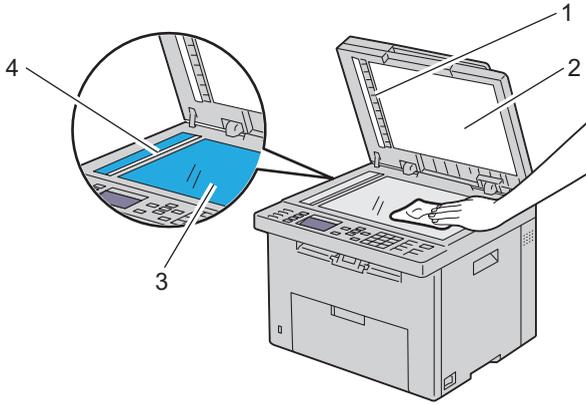
1	White Strip
2	White Document Cover
3	Document Glass
4	ADF Glass

4 Wipe the underside of the white document cover and white sheet until they are clean and dry.
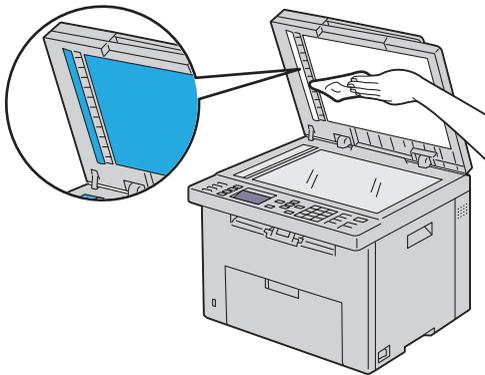
5 Close the document cover.
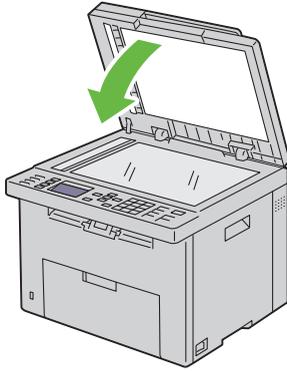
Cleaning the ADF Feed Roller

Keeping the ADF feed roller clean helps ensure the best possible copies. It is recommended to clean the ADF feed roller at regular intervals.

1 Open the ADF cover.
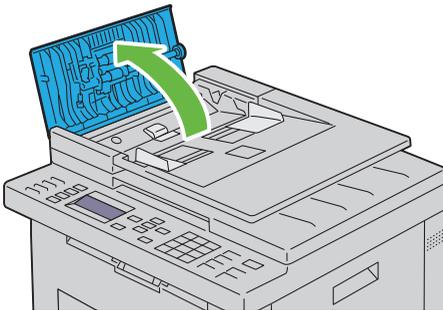
2 Wipe the ADF feed roller with a dry soft lint-free cloth or paper towel until it is clean.

If the ADF feed roller gets soiled with ink stains, paper from the ADF may also be soiled. In this case, slightly dampen a soft lint-free cloth or paper towel with a neutral detergent or water, and then remove the contamination from the ADF feed roller until it is clean and dry.

26
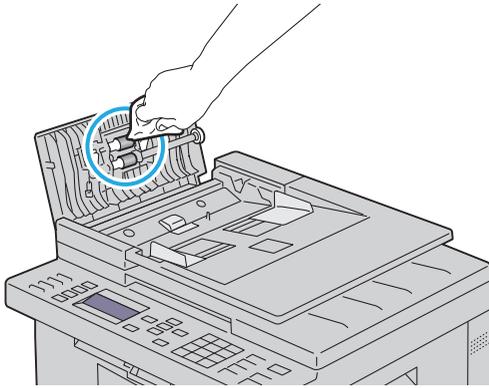
Clearing Jams

Careful selection of appropriate print media and proper loading allow you to avoid most jams. See "Print Media Guidelines" on page 189 for more information.

NOTE: Before buying large quantities of any print media, it is recommended that you try a sample first.

Avoiding Jams

- Use only recommended print media. See "Print Media Guidelines" on page 189 for more information.

- See "Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)" on page 202 and "Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)" on page 211 to load print media properly.

- Do not overload the print media sources. Ensure that the stack print media height does not exceed the maximum height indicated by the load line labels in the tray.

- Do not load wrinkled, creased, damp, or curled print media.

- Flex, fan, and straighten print media before you load it. If a jam occurs with print media, try feeding one sheet at a time through the single sheet feeder.

- Do not use print media that you have cut or trimmed.

- Do not mix print media sizes, weights, or types in the same print media source.

- Ensure that the recommended print side is face up when you insert the print media. Also, the recommended print side should be face down when using the single sheet feeder.

- Keep print media stored in an acceptable environment. For more information, see "Storing Print Media" on page 196.

- Do not remove the feeding tray during a print job.

- Push the tray in firmly after loading.

- Ensure that all cables that connect to the printer are correctly attached.
- Overtightening the guides may cause jams.

Identifying the Location of Paper Jams

⚠ **CAUTION: Do not attempt to clear any jams using tools or instruments. This may permanently damage the printer.**

The following illustration shows where paper jams may occur along the print media path.
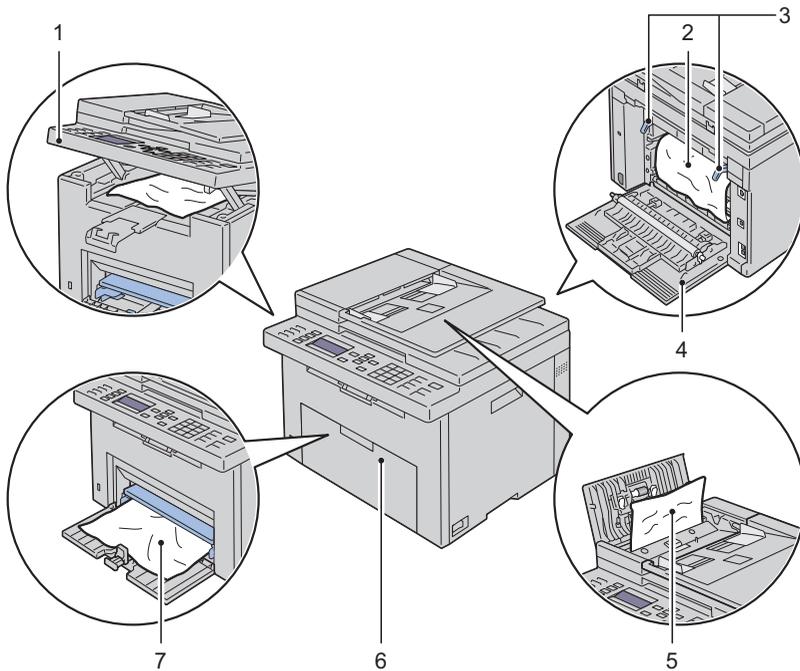
1	Scanner Unit
2	Fuser
3	Fuser Release Lever
4	Rear Cover

5	ADF Cover
6	Front Cover
7	Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)

Clearing Paper Jams From the ADF

When a document jams while it passes through the Automatic Document Feeder (ADF), remove jams in the following procedure.

⚠ **CAUTION: Before performing any of the following procedures, read and follow the safety instructions in your Product Information Guide.**

⚠ **CAUTION: To prevent electric shock, always turn off the printer and disconnect the power cable from the grounded outlet before performing maintenance.**

⚠ **CAUTION: To avoid burns, do not clear paper jams immediately after printing. The fuser becomes extremely hot during use.**

📝 **NOTE:** To resolve the error displayed on the operator panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

1 Open the ADF cover.
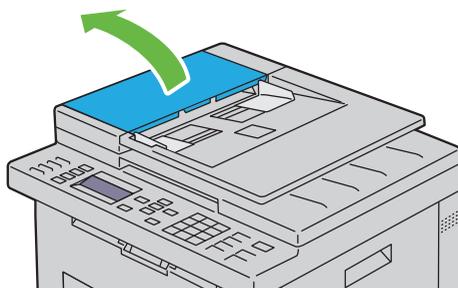
2 Remove the jammed document by carefully pulling it in the direction of the arrow shown in the following illustration.
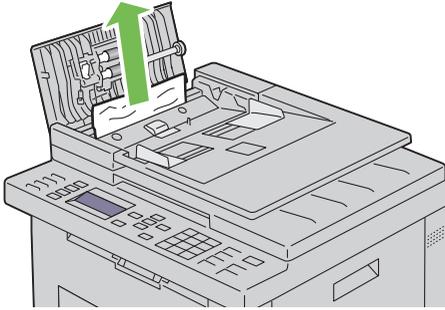
3 If you find it difficult to pull the document, open the document feeder tray.
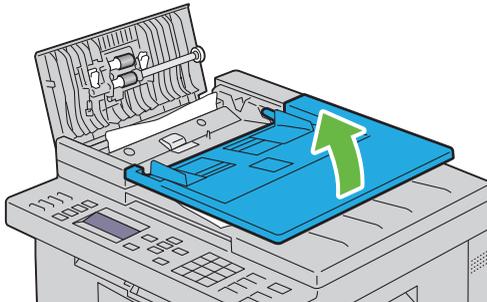
4 Remove the jammed document from the document output tray.
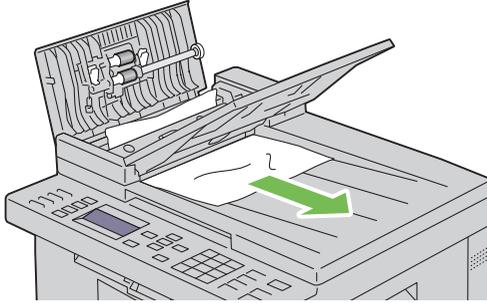
5 Close the document feeder tray.
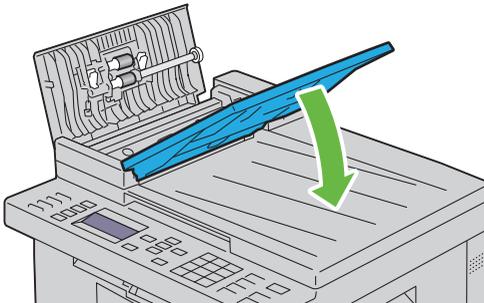
6 Close the ADF cover, and then load the documents back into the ADF.
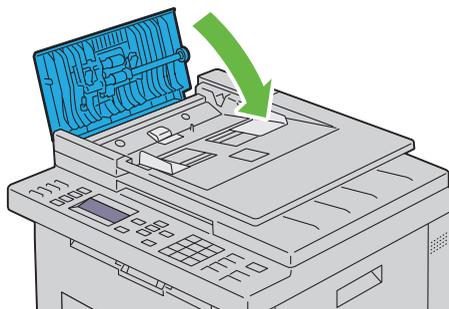
> 📝 **NOTE:** Ensure that you adjust the document guides before printing a Legal-size document.

7 If you cannot remove the jammed document from the document output tray or cannot find any jammed document there, open the document output tray.
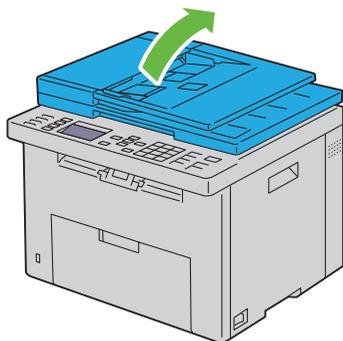
8 Remove the document from the ADF feed roller or the feed area by carefully pulling the document in the direction of the arrow shown in the following illustration.
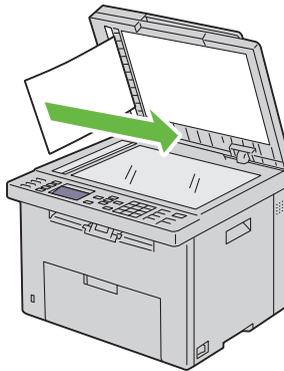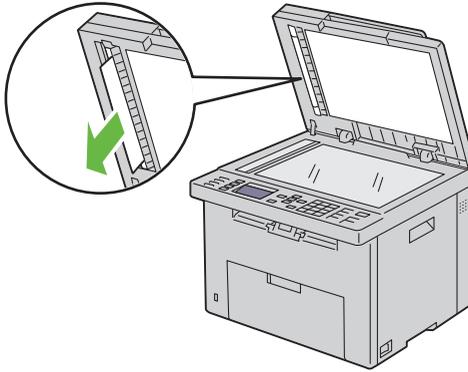
Clearing Paper Jams From the Front of the Printer

⚠ **CAUTION: Before performing any of the following procedures, read and follow the safety instructions in your Product Information Guide.**

📝 **NOTE:** To resolve the error displayed on the operator panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

1 Pull the PSI out.
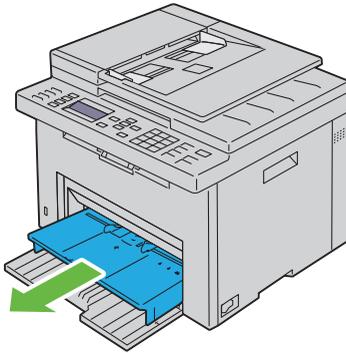
2 Remove any paper jammed from the front of the printer.
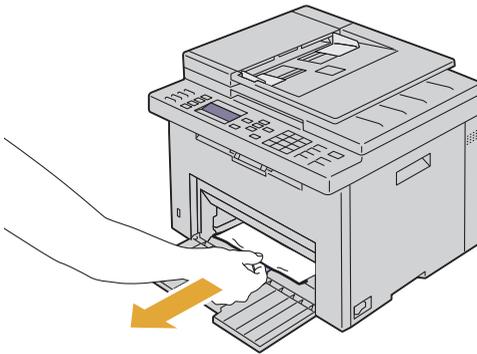
3 Replace the PSI in the printer.

Clearing Paper Jams From the Back of the Printer

⚠ **CAUTION: Before performing any of the following procedures, read and follow the safety instructions in your Product Information Guide.**

⚠ **CAUTION: To prevent electric shock, always turn off the printer and disconnect the power cable from the grounded outlet before performing maintenance.**

⚠ **CAUTION: To avoid burns, do not clear paper jams immediately after printing. The fuser becomes extremely hot during use.**

📝 **NOTE:** To resolve the error displayed on the operator panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

1 Push the rear cover release handle and open the rear cover.
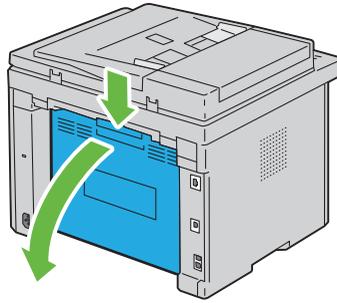
2 Lift up the fuser release levers.

3 Remove any paper jammed from the back of the printer.

4 Lower the fuser release levers to their original position.
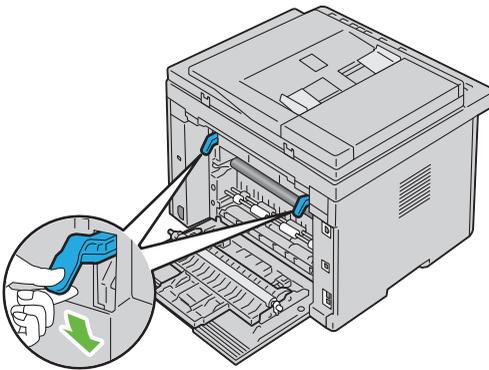
5 Close the rear cover.
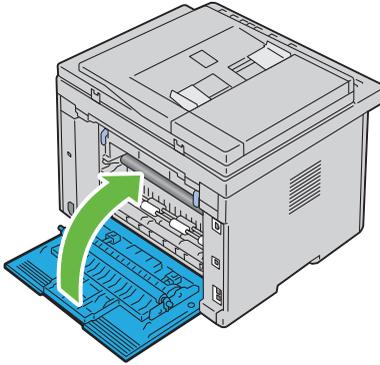
Clearing Paper Jams From the Output Tray

⚠ **CAUTION: Before performing any of the following procedures, read and follow the safety instructions in your Product Information Guide.**

⚠ **CAUTION: To prevent electric shock, always turn off the printer and disconnect the power cable from the grounded outlet before performing maintenance.**

⚠ **CAUTION: To avoid burns, do not clear paper jams immediately after printing. The fuser becomes extremely hot during use.**

✎ **NOTE:** To resolve the error displayed on the operator panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

1 Push the rear cover release handle and open the rear cover.
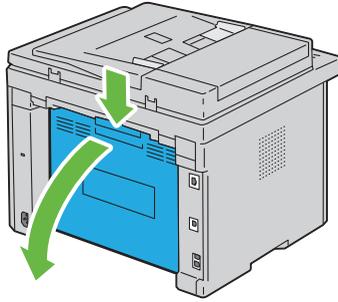
2 Lift up the fuser release levers.
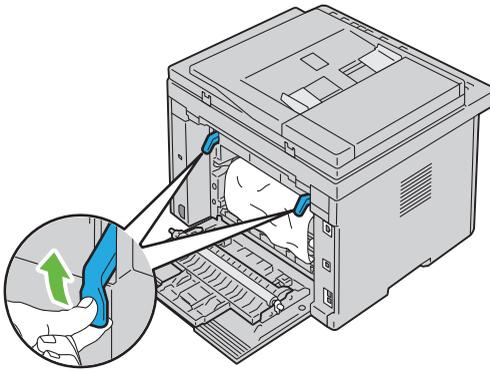
3 Remove any paper jammed from the back of the printer. If no paper is found in the paper path, face the front of the printer and check the output tray.
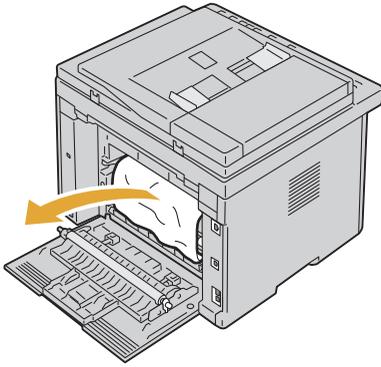
4 Lift and open the scanner unit.
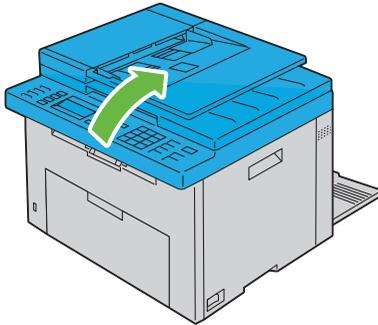
5 Remove any paper jammed out of the output tray.
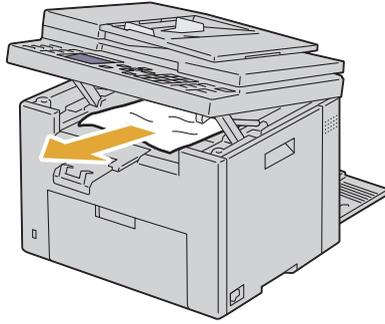
6 Lower and close the scanner unit.
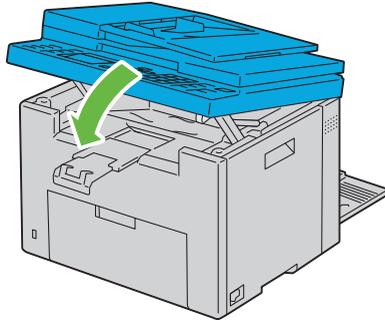
7 Lower the fuser release levers to their original position.
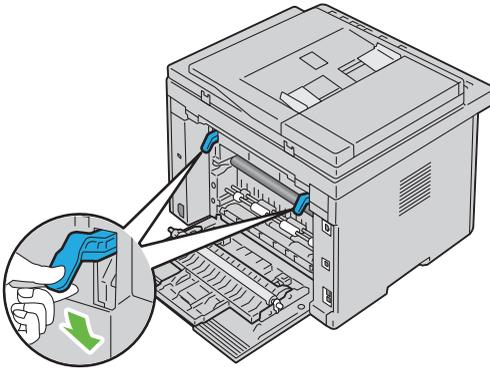
8 Close the rear cover.

Troubleshooting

27
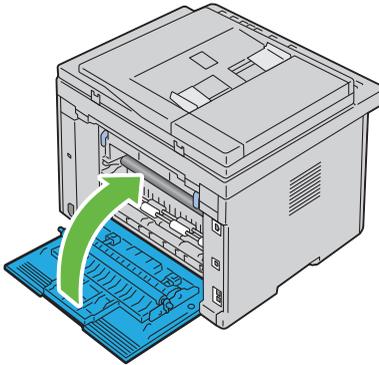
Troubleshooting

Basic Printer Problems

Some printer problems can be easy to resolve. If a problem occurs with your printer, check each of the following:

- The power cable is connected to the printer, and to a properly grounded electrical outlet.

- The printer is turned on.

- The electrical outlet is not turned off at any switch or breaker.

- Other electrical equipment plugged into the outlet is working.

- When your printer is connected to the network with the Ethernet cable, the USB cable is not connected between the printer and the computer.

- When your printer is connected to the computer with the USB cable, the Ethernet cable is not connected between the printer and the network.

If you have checked all of the above and still have a problem, turn off the printer, wait for 10 seconds, and then turn on the printer. This often fixes the problem.

Display Problems

Problem	Action
After the printer is turned on, the display on the operator panel is blank, keeps showing the DELL logo, or the back light is not lit.	• Turn off the printer, wait for 10 seconds, and turn on the printer. • Self Test Message appears on the operator panel. When the test is completed, Ready is displayed.

Problem	Action
Menu settings changed from the operator panel have no effect.	Settings in the software program, the printer driver, or the printer utilities have precedence over the settings made on the operator panel.
	Change the menu settings from the printer driver, the printer utilities, or the software program instead of the operator panel.

Printing Problems

Problem	Action
Job did not print or incorrect characters printed.	Ensure that Ready appears on the operator panel before you send a job to print.
	Ensure that print media is loaded in the printer.
	Verify that you are using the correct printer driver.
	Ensure that you are using the correct Ethernet or USB cable and that it is securely connected to the printer.
	Verify that the correct print media size is selected.
	If you are using a print spooler, verify that the spooler has not stalled.
	Check the interface of your printer from the Admin Menu.
	Determine the host interface you are using. Print a device settings page to verify that the current interface settings are correct. Refer to "Printing a System Settings Page" on page 232 for details on how to print a device settings page.

Problem	Action
Print media misfeeds or multiple feeds occur	Ensure that the print media you are using meets the specifications for your printer. See "Supported Paper Sizes" on page 196 for more information.
	Fan the print media before loading it.
	Ensure that the print media is loaded correctly.
	Ensure that the width and length guides are adjusted correctly.
	Ensure that the PSI is securely inserted.
	Do not overfill the print media sources.
	Do not force print media into the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI) or the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF) when you load it. Otherwise, it may skew or buckle.
	Ensure that the print media is not curled.
	Load the recommended print side correctly for the type of print media you are using. See "Loading Print Media" on page 201 for more information.
	Turn the print media over or around and try printing again to see if feeding improves.
	Do not mix print media types.
	Do not mix reams of print media.
	Remove the top and bottom curled sheets of a ream before loading the print media.
	Load a print media source only when it is empty.
The envelope is creased after printing.	Ensure that the envelope is loaded as instructed in "Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)" on page 202 or "Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)" on page 211.
Page breaks in unexpected places.	Increase the setting for **Time-Out** in the **Printer Settings** menu in the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.
Print media does not stack neatly in the output bin.	Turn the print media stack over in the PSI and MPF.

Problem	Action
Printer does not duplex pages.	Select **Flip on Short Edge** or **Flip on Long Edge** from the **Duplex** menu on the **Paper/Output** tab in the printer driver.

Print Quality Problems

✐ **NOTE:** In this section, some procedures that use the Tool Box can also be performed using the operator panel or **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. For information on how to use the operator panel and Dell Configuration Web Tool, see "Understanding the Printer Menus" on page 359 and "Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool" on page 123.

The output is too light

ABC
DEF

Action		Yes	No
1	The toner cartridges may be low or need to be replaced. Confirm the amount of toner in each toner cartridge. **1** Check the toner level in the **Status** tab in the Status Monitor. **2** Replace the toner cartridges as necessary. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
2	Verify that the print media is not damp and the correct print media is used. See "Supported Paper Sizes" on page 196. If not, use the print media recommended for the printer. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3.

Action		Yes	No
3	Verify that the **Paper Type** setting in the printer driver matches the print media you loaded.	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.
	1 On the **Paper/Output** tab in **Printing Preferences** of the printer driver, check the **Paper Type** setting.		
	2 Load dry (not damp) and corrected print media, and then click **Print Test Page** in **Properties** of the printer driver.		
	Is the problem recovered?		

Toner smears or print comes off/Stain on back side

Action		Yes	No
1	The print media surface may be uneven. Try changing the **Paper Type** setting in the printer driver. For example, change the plain paper to thick.	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
	1 On the **Paper/Output** tab in **Printing Preferences** of the printer driver, change the **Paper Type** setting.		
	Is the problem recovered?		
2	Verify that the correct print media is being used. See "Supported Paper Sizes" on page 196. If not, use the print media recommended for the printer.	The task is complete.	Go to action 3.
	Is the problem recovered?		

Action		Yes	No
3	Adjust the fuser temperature. **1** Launch the Tool Box, and click **Adjust Fuser** on the **Printer Maintenance** tab. **2** Adjust the fixing temperature by turning up the value for your printing media. **3** Click **Apply New Settings**. **4** Click close box to exit Tool Box. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Random spots/Blurred images
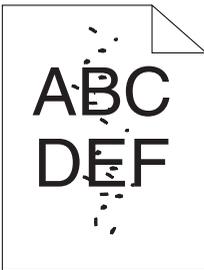
Action		Yes	No
1	Ensure that the toner cartridges are installed correctly. See "Installing a Toner Cartridge" on page 442. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
2	If you use non-Dell brand toner cartridges, install Dell brand toner cartridges. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3.

Action		Yes	No
3	Clean up the fuser unit. **1** Load one sheet of paper on the MPF, and then print a solid image all over paper. **2** Load the printed sheet with the side to be printed on facing down, and then print a blank sheet of paper. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

The entire output is blank
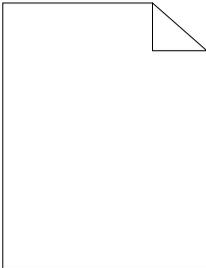
If this trouble comes out, contact Dell.

Streaks appear on the output
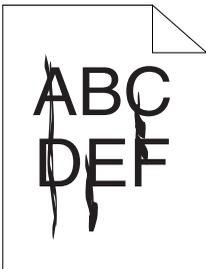
If this trouble comes out, contact Dell.

Pitched color dots
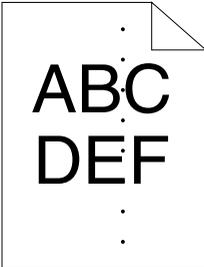
If this trouble comes out, contact Dell.

Vertical blanks
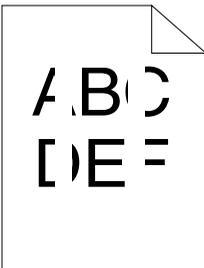
	Action	Yes	No
1	Clean inside the printer and performing test print.	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.
	1 Clean inside the printer by using the cleaning rod. See "Cleaning Inside the Printer" on page 444.		
	2 Click **Print Test Page** in **Properties** of the printer driver.		
	Is the problem recovered?		

Ghosting

	Action	Yes	No
1	Adjust the transfer bias. **1** Launch the Tool Box, and click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab. **2** Click the **Ghost Configuration Chart** button. The ghost configuration chart is printed. **3** Launch the Tool Box, and click **BTR Refresh Mode** on the **Printer Maintenance** tab. **4** Check the check box next to **On**, and then click **Apply New Settings**. **5** Click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab. **6** Click the **Ghost Configuration Chart** button. The ghost configuration chart is printed. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
2	The print media surface may be uneven. Try changing the **Paper Type** setting in the printer driver. For example, change the plain paper to thick. **1** On the **Paper/Output** tab in **Printing Preferences** of the printer driver, change the **Paper Type** setting. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3.

Action		Yes	No

3	Adjust the fuser temperature.
	  1 Launch the Tool Box, and click **Adjust Fuser** on the **Printer Maintenance** tab.
	  2 Adjust the fixing temperature by turning up the value for your printing media.
	  3 Click **Apply New Settings**.
	  4 Click close box to exit Tool Box.
	
	Is the problem recovered?
		The task is complete.	Go to action 4.

4	If you use non-recommended print media, use the print media recommended for the printer. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Fog

Action		Yes	No
1	Is the whole page printed light?	Contact Dell.	Go to action 2.

2	Start **Clean Developer**.
	  1 Launch the Tool Box, and click **Clean Developer** on the **Diagnosis** tab.
	  2 Click the **Start** button.
	
	Is the problem recovered?
		The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Bead-Carry-Out (BCO)

	Action	Yes	No
1	If the printer is installed in a high altitude location, set the altitude of the location. **1** Launch the Tool Box, and click **Adjust Altitude** on the **Printer Maintenance** tab. **2** Select the value close to the altitude of the location where the printer is installed. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Auger mark

Action	Yes	No

1 The toner cartridges may be low or need to be replaced. Confirm the amount of toner in each toner cartridge.
   1 Check the toner level in the **Status** tab in the Status Monitor.
   2 Replace the toner cartridges as necessary.
Is the problem recovered?
	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

2 Start **Clean Developer**.
   1 Launch the Tool Box, and click **Clean Developer** on the **Diagnosis** tab.
   2 Click the **Start** button.
Is the problem recovered?
	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Wrinkled/Stained paper

Action	Yes	No
1 Verify that the correct print media is being used. See "Supported Paper Sizes" on page 196 and "Print Media Guidelines" on page 189. If not, use the print media recommended for the printer. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	If printing on an envelope, go to action 2. If printing on print media other than envelopes, contact Dell.

	Action	Yes	No
2	Check the crease. Is the crease within 30 mm of the four edges of the envelope?	This type of crease is considered normal. Your printer is not at fault.	If the envelope is 220 mm or longer (C5 or Envelope#10), go to action 3a. If the envelope is shorter than 220 mm (Monarch or DL), go to action 3b.
3a	Does the envelope have a flap on the long edge?	The envelope is Envelope#10. Go to 4b.	The envelope is C5. Go to action 4a.
3b	Load the envelope long edge feed in the MPF with the flap open and facing up. For details, see "When Loading Envelope#10, DL, or Monarch" on page 207. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Go to action 4b.
4a	Load the envelope in the MPF with the flap open and facing up. For details, see "When Loading C5" on page 208. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.
4b	Use a different size envelope. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

The top margins is incorrect
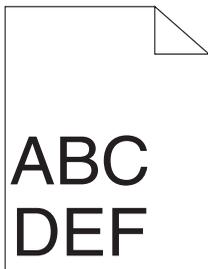
Action		Yes	No
1	Ensure that the margins are set correctly on the application being used.	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.
	Is the problem recovered?		

Color registration is out of alignment

Action		Yes	No
1	Execute auto color registration adjustment. **1** Launch the Tool Box, and click **Registration Adjustment** on the **Printer Maintenance** tab. **2** Click the **Start** button next to **Auto Correct**. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
2	Clean the CTD sensor. **1** Clean the CTD sensor. See "Cleaning the Color Toner Density (CTD) Sensor" on page 448. **2** Launch the Tool Box, and click **Registration Adjustment** on the **Printer Maintenance** tab. **3** Click the **Start** button next to **Auto Correct**. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3.

Action		Yes	No
3	Print the color registration chart and manually correct the color registration.	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.
	1 Click **Registration Adjustment** on the **Printer Maintenance** tab.		
	2 Click the **Start** button next to **Print Color Regi Chart**.		
	The color registration chart is printed.		
	3 Adjust till all straight lines are at the value of 0. See "Adjusting Color Registration" on page 450 for details.		
	4 Click the **Apply New Settings** button.		
	5 Click the **Start** button next to **Print Color Regi Chart** to print the color registration chart again.		
	Is the problem recovered?		

Protrudent / Bumpy paper

Action		Yes	No
1	Clean up the fuser unit.	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.
	1 Load one sheet of paper on the MPF, and then print a solid image all over paper.		
	2 Load the printed sheet with the side to be printed on facing down, and then print a blank sheet of paper.		
	Is the problem recovered?		

Jam

> **NOTE:** In this section, some procedures that use the Tool Box can also be performed using the operator panel or Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool. For information on how to use the operator panel and Dell Configuration Web Tool, see "Understanding the Printer Menus" on page 359 and "Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool" on page 123.

Misfeed jam

Action		Yes	No
1	Remove the paper from the PSI, and then ensure that papers are properly inserted on the MPF. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Proceed to the action corresponding to the type of the print media being used: • Thick - 2a • Thin - 2b • Envelope - 2c If performing manual duplex printing, go to action 2d. If using paper other than the above or if not performing duplex printing, go to action 2e.
2a	Use thick paper that is 216 gsm or less. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3a.
2b	Use thin paper that is 60 gsm or more. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3a.

Action		Yes	No
2c	Ensure that the envelope is properly loaded in the MPF as instructed in "Loading an Envelope in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)" on page 207. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3b.
2d	Ensure that the print media is not curled. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3a.
2e	Is the print media damp?	Go to action 3c.	Go to action 3a.
3a	Fan the print media. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3b.
3b	If the envelope is deformed, correct it or use another envelope. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3a.
3c	Turn over the print media. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Go to action 4.
4	Use print media that is not damp. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Multi-feed jam

Action		Yes	No
1	Remove the paper from the PSI, and then ensure that papers are inserted properly in the MPF. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
2	Is the print media damp?	Go to action 3a.	Go to action 3b.
3a	Use print media that is not damp. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3b.

Action		Yes	No
3b	Fan the print media. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

A document jam occurs in the ADF if scanning of multiple-sheet document is cancelled while scanning is in progress.

Action		Yes	No
1	Clear the jam. See "Clearing Paper Jams From the ADF" on page 461. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Copy Problem

Problem	Action
A document loaded in the ADF cannot be copied.	Ensure that the ADF cover is firmly closed.

Fax Problems

Problem	Action
The printer is not working, there is no display and the buttons are not working.	Unplug the power cord and plug it in again.
	Ensure that there is power to the electrical receptacle.
No dial tone sounds.	Check that the phone line is connected properly. See "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 48.
	Check that the phone socket in the wall is working by plugging in another phone.

Problem	Action
The numbers stored in the memory do not dial correctly.	Ensure that the numbers are stored in the memory correctly.
	Print a Address Book list.
The document does not feed into the printer.	Ensure that the document is not wrinkled and you are putting it in correctly. Check that the document is of the right size, not too thick or thin.
	Ensure that the ADF cover is firmly closed.
Faxes are not received automatically.	The FAX mode should be selected.
	Ensure that there is paper in the PSI or MPF.
	Check to see if the display shows Memory Full.
The printer does not send faxes.	Sending should show up on the display.
	Check the other fax machine you are sending to, to see if it can receive your fax.
The incoming fax has blank spaces or is received in poor-quality.	The fax machine sending you the fax may be faulty.
	A noisy phone line can cause line errors.
	Check your printer by making a copy.
	The toner cartridge may be empty. Replace the toner cartridge. For details, see "Replacing Toner Cartridges" on page 441.
Some of the words on an incoming fax are stretched.	The fax machine sending you the fax had a temporary document jam.
There are lines on the documents you send.	Check your scan glass for marks and clean it. See "Cleaning the Scanner" on page 454.
The printer dials a number, but the connection with another fax machine fails.	The other fax machine may be turned off, out of paper, or cannot answer incoming calls. Speak with the other machine operator and ask her/him to sort out the problem.
Documents are not stored in the memory.	There may not be enough memory to store the document. If the display shows a Memory Full message, delete any documents you no longer need from the memory and then restore the document, or wait for the job in progress (e.g., a fax transmission or reception) to complete.

Problem	Action
Blank areas appear at the bottom of each page or on other pages, with a small strip of text at the top.	You may have chosen the wrong paper settings in the user option setting. See "Print Media Guidelines" on page 189.
The printer will not send or receive faxes.	Ensure that the country code is set correctly under ☰ (**Menu**) → System → Admin Menu → Fax Settings → Country.
	Check that the phone line is connected properly. See "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 48.
An error often occurs during a fax transmission or reception.	Reduce the modem speed under ☰ (**Menu**) → System → Admin Menu → Fax Settings → Modem Speed.

Scanning Problems

Problem	Action
The scanner does not work.	Ensure that you place the document to be scanned face down from the document feeder glass, or face up in the ADF.
	There may not be enough available memory to hold the document you want to scan. Try the Prescan function to see if that works. Try lowering the scan resolution rate.
	Check that the USB cable is connected properly.
	Ensure that the USB cable is not defective. Switch the cable with a known good cable. If necessary, replace the cable.
	Check that the scanner is configured correctly. Check the application you want to use to make certain that the scanner job is being sent to the correct port.

Problem	Action
The printer scans very slowly.	Graphics are scanned more slowly than text when using the Scan to E-mail or Scan to Network feature.
	Communication speed becomes slow in scan mode because of the large amount of memory required to analyze and reproduce the scanned image.
	Scanning images at a high resolution takes more time than scanning at a low resolution.
Document misfeeds or multiple feeds occur in the Automatic Document Feeder (ADF).	Ensure that the document's paper type meets the specifications for the printer. See "Supported Paper Types" on page 198 for more information.
	Check whether the document is properly loaded in the ADF.
	Ensure that the document guides are adjusted properly.
	Ensure that the number of document sheets do not exceed the maximum capacity of the ADF.
	Ensure that the document is not curled.
	Fan the document well before loading it in the ADF.
Vertical stripes appear on the output when scanned using the ADF.	Clean the ADF glass. See "Cleaning the Scanner" on page 454.
A smear appears at the same location on the output when scanned using the document glass.	Clean the document glass. See "Cleaning the Scanner" on page 454.
Images are skewed.	Ensure that the document is loaded straight in the ADF or on the document glass.
Diagonal lines appear jagged when scanned using the ADF.	If the document uses thick media, try scanning it from the document glass.

Problem	Action
The printer does not properly transfer scan data to a specified destination via the Scan to E-mail or Scan to Network feature.	Check if the following settings have been set correctly on the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. **Scan to Network** Check the following settings under **Address Book → Server Address**: • **Server Address** • **Share Name** • **Server Path** • **Login Name** • **Login Password** **Scan to E-mail** Check the following setting under **Address Book → Fax/E-Mail**: • **E-Mail Address**
Cannot scan using WIA on a Windows Server 2003 computer.	Enable WIA on the computer. To enable WIA: **1** Click **Start**, point to **Administrative Tools**, and then click **Services**. **2** Right-click **Windows Image Acquisition (WIA)**, and then click **Start**.
Cannot scan using TWAIN or WIA on a Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 R2 computer.	Install the Desktop Experience feature on the computer. To install Desktop Experience: **1** Click **Start**, point to **Administrative Tools**, and then click **Server Manager**. **2** Under **Features Summary**, click **Add Features**. **3** Select the **Desktop Experience** check box, click **Next**, and then click **Install**. **4** Restart the computer.

Scanner Driver/Printer Utility Problems

Problem	Action
Unable to retrieve the Address Book data from the printer on the Address Book Editor.	Ensure that your computer and the printer is properly connected with the USB cable.
	Ensure that the printer's power is on.
	Ensure that the printer driver is installed on your computer. (The Address Book Editor retrieves the Address Book data via the printer driver.)
The TWAIN driver cannot connect to the printer.	Ensure that your computer and the printer is properly connected with the USB cable.
	Check whether the printer is on. If the printer is on, reboot it by turning the power switch off and then on again.
	If a scan application is running, close the application once, restart the application, and then try scanning again.
The scanner driver has not been registered on your computer and cannot be accessed from ScanButton Manager.	Install the scanner driver. If the driver is installed, uninstall it and then reinstall it.
Failed to scan your document on the printer via ScanButton Manager.	Ensure that your computer and the printer is properly connected with the USB cable.
	Check whether the printer is on. If the printer is on, reboot it by turning the power switch off and then on again.
	If a scan application is running, close the application once, restart the application, and then try scanning again.
Failed to create an image file via ScanButton Manager.	Ensure that there is sufficient space in your hard disk.
	Uninstall ScanButton Manager on your computer and then reinstall it.
Failed to initialize ScanButton Manager.	Uninstall ScanButton Manager on your computer and then reinstall it.

Problem	Action
Failed to execute ScanButton Manager.	Uninstall ScanButton Manager on your computer and then reinstall it.
An unexpected error occurred on ScanButton Manager.	Uninstall ScanButton Manager on your computer and then reinstall it.

Other Problems

Problem	Action
Condensation has occurred inside the printer.	This usually occurs within several hours after you heat the room in winter. This also occurs when the printer is operating in a location where relative humidity reaches 85% or more. Adjust the humidity or relocate the printer to an appropriate environment.
No file is displayed on the operator panel when you are selecting a file for Printing from USB Memory feature.	Confirm that there are files with the supported file formats (PDF, TIFF, or JPEG) in the USB storage device.
	If the target file is in a deep hierarchy in the USB storage device, move the file to the root directory in the USB storage device with your computer.
	Shorten the target file name in the USB storage device with your computer, and try printing again.

Contacting Service

When you call for printer service, be prepared to describe the problem you are experiencing or the error message on the display.

You need to know the model of your printer and serial number. See the label located inside the side door of your printer.

Appendix

B

Appendix

Dell Technical Support Policy

Technician-assisted technical support requires the cooperation and participation of the customer in the troubleshooting process and provides for restoration of the operating system, software program and hardware drivers to the original default configuration as shipped from Dell, as well as the verification of appropriate functionality of the printer and all Dell-installed hardware. In addition to this technician assisted technical support, online technical support is available at Dell Support. Additional technical support options may be available for purchase.

Dell provides limited technical support for the printer and any Dell-installed software and peripherals. Support for third-party software and peripherals is provided by the original manufacturer, including those purchased and/or installed through Software & Peripherals (DellWare), ReadyWare, and Custom Factory Integration (CFI/DellPlus).

Online Services

You can learn about Dell products and services on the following websites:

> www.dell.com
>
> www.dell.com/ap (Asian/Pacific countries only)
>
> www.dell.com/jp (Japan only)
>
> www.euro.dell.com (Europe only)
>
> www.dell.com/la (Latin American and Caribbean countries)
>
> www.dell.ca (Canada only)

You can access Dell Support through the following websites and e-mail addresses:

- Dell Support websites

  support.dell.com

support.euro.dell.com (Europe only)

- Dell Support e-mail addresses

  mobile_support@us.dell.com

  support@us.dell.com

  la-techsupport@dell.com (Latin America and Caribbean countries only)

  apsupport@dell.com (Asian/Pacific countries only)

- Dell Marketing and Sales e-mail addresses

  apmarketing@dell.com (Asian/Pacific countries only)

  sales_canada@dell.com (Canada only)

- Anonymous file transfer protocol (FTP)

  ftp.dell.com

  Log in as user: `anonymous`, and use your e-mail address as your password.

Warranty and Return Policy

Dell Computer Corporation ("Dell") manufactures its hardware products from parts and components that are new or equivalent to new in accordance with industry-standard practices. For information about the Dell warranty for your printer, see **support.dell.com**.

Recycling Information

It is recommended that customers dispose of their used computer hardware, monitors, printers, and other peripherals in an environmentally sound manner. Potential methods include reuse of parts or whole products and recycling of products, components, and/or materials.

For specific information on Dell's worldwide recycling programs, see **www.dell.com/ recyclingworldwide**.

Contacting Dell

For customers in the United States, call 800-WWW-Dell (800-999-3355).

NOTE: If you do not have an active Internet connection, you can find contact information on your purchase invoice, packing slip, bill, in your Dell catalog.

Dell provides several online and telephone-based support and service options. Availability varies by country and product, and some services may not be available in your area. To contact Dell for sales, technical support, or customer service issues:

1 Visit **support.dell.com**.

2 Verify your country or region in the **Choose A Country/Region** drop-down menu at the bottom of the page.

3 Click **Contact Us** on the left side of the page.

4 Select the appropriate service or support link based on your need.

5 Choose the method of contacting Dell that is convenient for you.

Index

Wireless Settings, 161, 168

Wireless Setup, 376

WPA2-PSK AES, 169

WPA-RSK TKIP, 169

WSD, 163, 167, 173

Y

Yellow terminator, 49